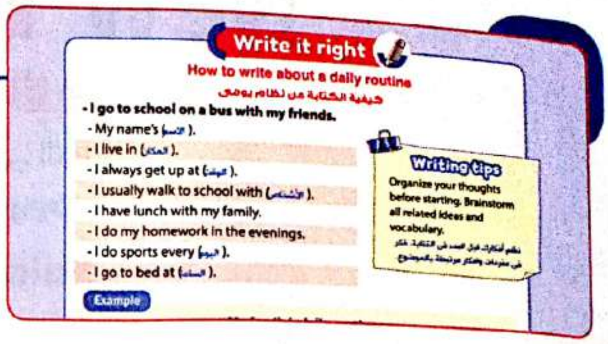
Main Features of AL ADWAA 2021

1. Main Book

1. Write it right

خطوات إرشادية لكتابة الفقرات ونماذج مجابة لتدريب الطلاب على هذا النوع المهم من الأسئلة.



Write it right

How to write about a daily routine

كيفية الكتابة عن نظام يومى

- I go to school on a bus with my friends.
- My name's ( ).
- I live in ( ).
- I always get up at ( ).
- I usually walk to school with ( ).
- I have lunch with my family.
- I do my homework in the evenings.
- I do sports every ( ).
- I go to bed at ( ).

Writing tips

Organize your thoughts before starting. Brainstorm all related ideas and vocabulary.

Example

2. Research Projects

عرض لأهم الموضوعات البحثية الخاصة بكل وحدة لتدريب الطالب على هذا الجزء المهم.



Unit 1 Research Projects

1. Your daily routine

Do a research on "Your daily routine".
Use these guiding points to help you:

- Introduce your daily activities./ Are they different in the summer than in winter?
- When do you get up?/ What time do you eat your meals?/ What do you do in your free time?
- Who cooks? What do you do to help around the house?

3. Al-Azhar Corner

تدريب عام على الوحدة خاصة بطلبة الأزهر الشريف



Al-Azhar Corner Based on Unit 1

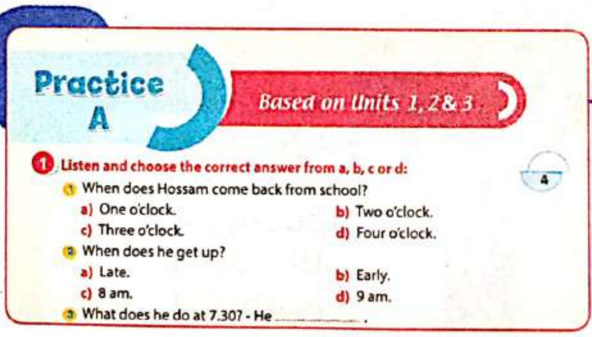
1) Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

A) Anwar : How often do you get up early?
Ali : ....

B) Sawsan : .... ?
Samar : I play chess in my free time.

4. Practice A/ B

عبارة عن تدريبات تراكمية على كل ثلاث وحدات لاختبار تحصيل الطالب الشهرى.



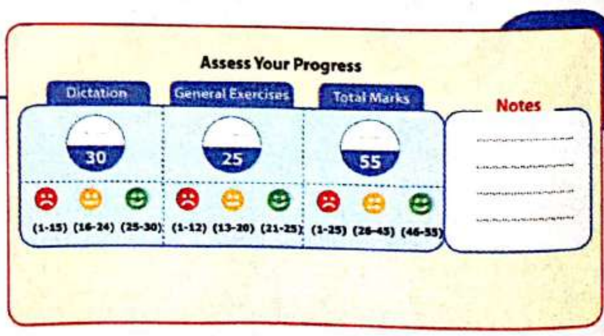
Practice A — Based on Units 1, 2 & 3

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When does Hossam come back from school?
   a) One o'clock. b) Two o'clock. c) Three o'clock. d) Four o'clock.
2. When does he get up?
   a) Late. b) Early. c) 8 am. d) 9 am.
3. What does he do at 7.30? - He ....

5. Assess Your Progress

قيم نفسك: قم بقياس مستواك الدراسى بشكل مستمر

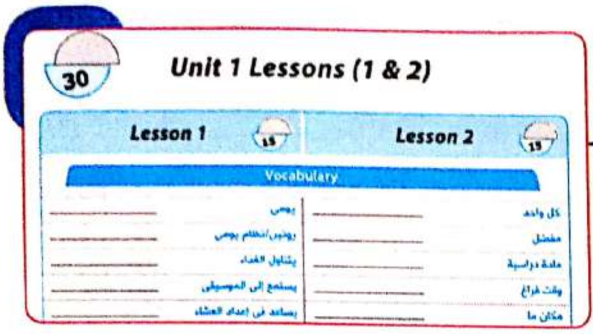


Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks
30	25	55
(1-15) (16-24) (25-30)	(1-12) (13-20) (21-25)	(1-25) (26-45) (46-55)

Notes

2. Ongoing Assessment & Skills Booklet


30 Unit 1 Lessons (1 & 2)

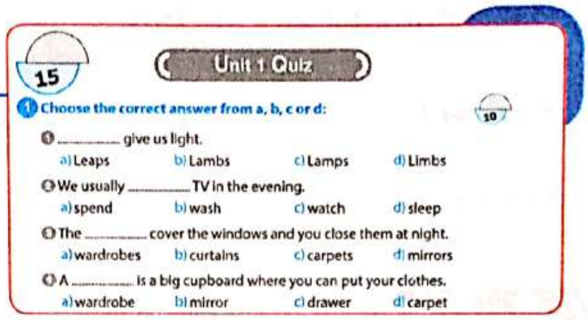
Lesson 1 (15)		Lesson 2 (15)	
Vocabulary			
يومى		كل واحد	
روتين/نظام يومى		مفضل	
يتناول الغداء		مادة دراسية	
يستمع إلى الموسيقى		وقت فراغ	
يساعد فى إعداد العشاء		مكان ما	

1. Lessons Dictation

إملاء خاصة بكل درسين مقسمين وموضحين بالدرجات الخاصة بكل درس.

2. Unit Quiz

اختبار قصير خاص بكل وحدة.


15 Unit 1 Quiz

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (10)

1 .... give us light.
a) Leaps b) Lambs c) Lamps d) Limbs

2 We usually .... TV in the evening.
a) spend b) wash c) watch d) sleep

3 The .... cover the windows and you close them at night.
a) wardrobes b) curtains c) carpets d) mirrors

4 A .... is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes.
a) wardrobe b) mirror c) drawer d) carpet


1 Parts of speech أجزاء الكلام

1. Nouns الأسماء: a word that is the name of a person, place, thing or idea
e.g. student, Jane, factory, Egypt, dog, camel, love

2. Pronouns الضمائر: a word that is used in the place of a noun or phrase that contains a noun
e.g. I, you, he, she, we, me, my, mine

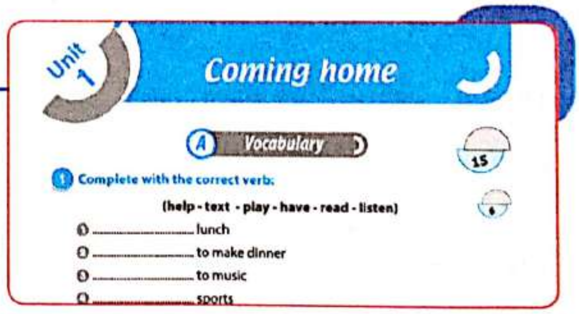
3. Adjectives الصفات — 4. Verbs الأفعال

3. Improve Your Skills

عبارة عن عرض لأهم المهارات الأساسية التى يحتاج إليها الطالب فى هذه المرحلة.

4. Learning Outcomes

عبارة عن تدريبات متنوعة غير مطابقة للمواصفات لقياس مدى استيعاب الطالب للدرس.

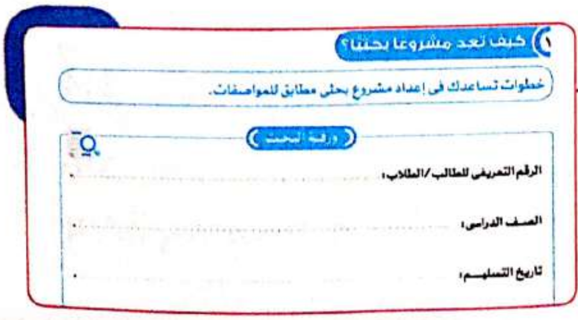

Unit 1 Coming home

A Vocabulary (15)

1 Complete with the correct verb: (6)
(help - text - play - have - read - listen)
1 .... lunch
2 .... to make dinner
3 .... to music
4 .... sports

5. Research Projects

عبارة عن أبحاث شهرية لتدريب الطالب على كيفية عمل بحث مع نموذج مجاب.


1 كيف تعد مشروعا بحثيا؟

خطوات تساعدك فى إعداد مشروع بحثى مطابق للمواصفات.

ورقة البحث

الرقم التعريفى للطالب/الطلاب:

الصف الدراسى:

تاريخ التسليم:

Contents

Module 1 Meeting people

Module 2 Different places

Check Your English

1 Complete the questions with these words.

did	~~does~~	highest	if	looking
made	shouldn't	Were		

1. What ...does... an engineer do?
2. What is a teaspoon .... of?
3. If you can see yourself, what are you .... at?
4. Which is the .... mountain in the world?
5. Why .... you eat a lot of chocolate?
6. What happens .... you touch a jellyfish?
7. Where .... Robinson Crusoe live for many years?
8. .... there any bedrooms in the houses of Deir el-Medina?

2 Now match the questions from Exercise 1 with the answers.

a [ ] It stings you.
b [ ] There is too much sugar in it.
c [1] He or she designs engines or parts of buildings.
d [ ] Mount Everest
e [ ] No, there weren't.
f [ ] on an island
g [ ] metal (but sometimes plastic)
h [ ] a mirror



3 Listen and check your answers to Exercises 1 and 2.

Listen

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

4 Read and underline the mistakes in these sentences.

1. I <u>got</u> short, curly hair. (....................)
2. That is not your bag, it is my. (....................)
3. Mariam didn't climb the mountain because she was frightening. (....................)
4. There are any peppers in the fridge. (....................)
5. Did you went to the park this morning? (....................)

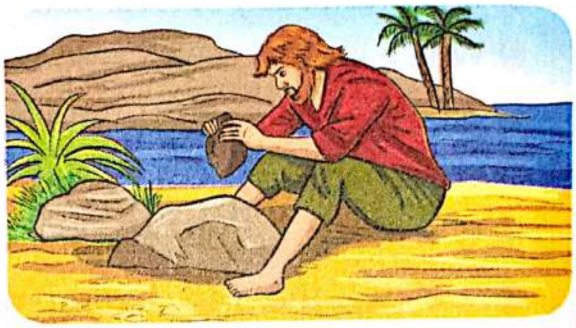
5 **Read the book summaries and write the missing sentences a–d in the right places.**

- **a** Some of the people are funny and some of them are scary!
- **b** The story moves slowly, but I like the story's message.
- **c** Should he talk to the man, or should he hide?
- **d** If he gets home on time, he will win a prize.

1

I really enjoyed this book. It is about a sailor who lived for many years on an island. In the morning, he always went for a walk on the beach alone, then, one day, he saw another person on the island! (1) ☐ Read it to find out!

Robinson Crusoe



2

This book is very exciting. It is about a man who must travel quickly through many places by ship and train. It is easier to travel through some countries than others! (2) ☐ It is a very difficult challenge, but will he do it?

Around the World in 80 Days



3

In this story, an old fisherman spends many days trying to catch a big fish. He is very good at fishing and catches the fish, but when he returns home, the fish is just a skeleton. However, the other fishermen respect the old man because he tried very hard. (3) ☐

The Old Man and the Sea



4

This story is very interesting! It is about a girl who goes to a very strange place. There are a lot of very interesting people and animals in this place and she has lots of adventures.

(4) a Will she find her way home?

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland



6 Ask and answer the questions about the stories in pairs.

1. Which is the only story that is not about the sea?

....

2. Which two stories are not only about people?

....

3. Which stories have forms of transport in them?

....

4. Which of the stories did you enjoy? Why?

....

7 Write a summary of another book or film that you enjoyed.

- Say what the story/film is about.
- Write about the people in the story/film and about what happens to them.
- Finish with a question or your opinion.

....

....

....

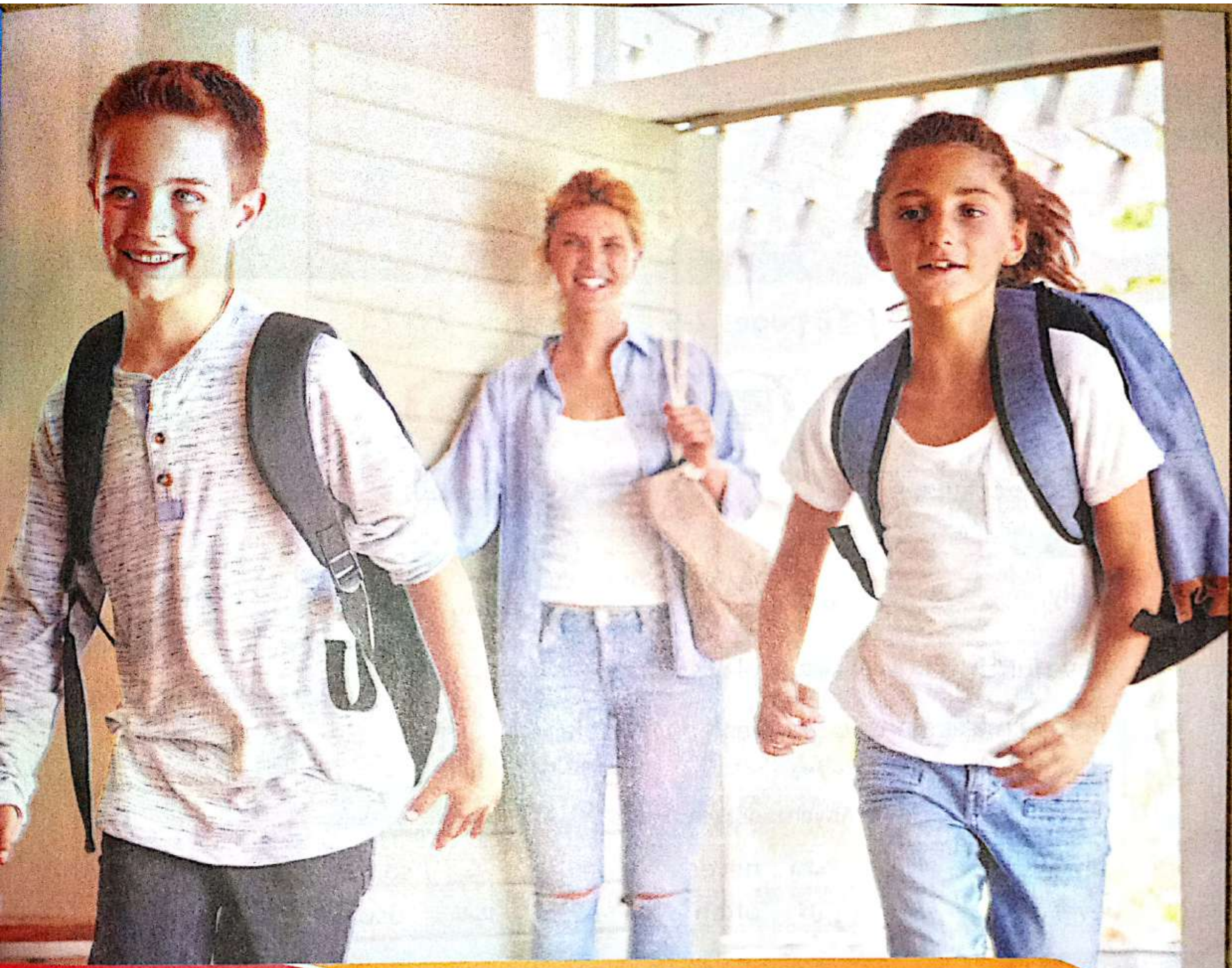
....

....

....

....

....



Unit 1 Coming home

Objectives of the unit

Reading : A text about daily routines; a blog; interviews about routines; a website article about children in India; *The Railway Children*

Writing : A text message; an email to a penfriend

Listening : Talks about daily routines; a description of a bedroom

Speaking : Discussing daily routines; describing bedrooms and furniture

Language : Present simple questions

Life Skills : Self-management: managing time and routine

Tapescript

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب تشير لأسئلة المتميزين

Lessons 1&2

SB pages 2-5 WB pages 72 & 73

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1

daily يومى	listen to music يستمع إلى الموسيقى	routine روتين/نظام يومى
have lunch يتناول الغداء	play sports يلعب رياضة	text friends يراسل أصدقاءه برسائل نصية
help to make dinner يساعد فى إعداد العشاء	read on the sofa يقرأ على الأريكة/الكنبة	

Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار

always دائمًا	never أبدًا	sometimes أحيانًا
every كل	often غالبًا	usually عادة

Lesson 2

a block of flats عمارة سكنية	best friend الصديق المقرب	interview مقابلة/حوار

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1

baker's مخبز	hobby هواية	prefer (red) يفضل
bread خبز	interest اهتمام	school day يوم دراسى
cook (ed) يطهى/يطبخ	parents الوالدان	topic موضوع
country دولة/بلد	person شخص	

Lesson 2

blog مدونة إلكترونية	free time وقت فراغ	something شىء ما
everyone كل واحد	fun مرح	somewhere مكان ما
favourite مفضل	grandma جدة	study (y ied) يذاكر/يدرس
flat شقة	here's ها هو	subject مادة دراسية

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 1

Verb	Expression	Arabic	Verb	Expression	Arabic
come ▶	home	يأتى إلى البيت	have ▶	a routine	لدية روتين/نظام يومى
do ▶	activities	يؤدى أنشطة		coffee	يتناول القهوة
	homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى	make ▶	breakfast	يُعد الإفطار
get ▶	home	يصل إلى البيت	take ▶	a bus	يأخذ أتوبيس
go to ▶	bed	يذهب للفراش	watch ▶	TV	يشاهد التلفاز

Lesson 2

Verb	Expression	Arabic	Verb	Expression	Arabic
do ▶	exercises	يؤدى تمارين	play ▶	chess	يلعب شطرنج
have ▶	breakfast	يتناول الإفطار		computer games	يلعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر
	fun	يمرح		that's why	ولهذا السبب
leave ▶	home	يغادر المنزل		the same as	نفس الشىء/مثل

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 1

at the weekend فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	for breakfast على وجبة الإفطار	in bed فى الفراش/السرير
at the/a hospital فى المستشفى	get to يصل إلى	on a way to فى الطريق إلى
days of the week أيام الأسبوع	help with يساعد فى	on holiday فى إجازة

Lesson 2

a photo of صورة لـ	different to مختلف عن	spend time on يقضى وقتًا فى
at break فى الفسحة	in the holidays فى الإجازات	study hard for يذاكر بجدّ لـ
at home فى البيت	on the right على اليمين	talk to يتكلم مع/إلى

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 1			
am صباحًا	pm بعد الظهر/مساءً	late متأخرًا	early مبكرًا
before قبل	after بعد	the same نفس الشيء	different مختلف
Lesson 2			
good for مفيد لـ	bad for ضار بـ	more أكثر	less أقل
important هام	unimportant غير هام		

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 1			
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
come	يأتى	came	come
get up	ينهض/يستيقظ	got up	got up
go	يذهب	went	gone
make	يصنع/يعد	made	made
read	يقرأ	read تنطق مثل كلمة (red)	read تنطق مثل كلمة (red)
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
take	يأخذ	took	taken
Lesson 2			
learn	يتعلم	learned/learnt	learned/learnt
leave	يترك/يغادر	left	left
sleep	ينام	slept	slept

Language Notes

1 **help to + inf. = help + inf.** يساعد

- My mother helps me **to** do my homework.
  = My mother helps me do my homework.

2 **home**

لا نستخدم حرف جر بمعنى (إلى) قبل هذه الكلمة

- come home يأتي إلى البيت - get home يصل إلى البيت - arrive home يصل إلى البيت -
  go home يذهب إلى البيت - walk home يمشى إلى البيت

Important Prepositions

3 **in + فترات اليوم (the morning - the afternoon - the evening)**
at night ليلاً

- We have our lunch in **the afternoon.**
- I often watch TV at **night.**

4 **at + الساعة** فى الساعة ....

- I always get up at **6:30 am.**

5 **by + وسائل المواصلات** بواسطة ....

- I go to school by bus with my friends.

on + (a/ an/ the/ my ....) + وسائل المواصلات

- I go to school on **a bus** with my friends.

in + (a/ an/ the/ my ....) + car/taxi

- I go to school in **a car** with my friends.

6 **on + أيام الاسبوع** فى يوم ....

- I don't go to school on **Fridays.**

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I usually walk .... home with my friends after school.
a) at b) on c) to d) no preposition

2 I help my mother .... breakfast.
a) make b) making c) to making d) made

3 .... Sundays, Farida texts her friends.
a) On b) Of c) At d) In

Write it right

How to write about a daily routine

كيفية الكتابة عن نظام يومى

- My name's (الاسم).
- I live in (المكان).
- I always get up at (الوقت).
- I usually walk to school with (الأشخاص).
- I have lunch with my family.
- I do my homework in the evenings.
- I do sports every (اليوم).
- I go to bed at (الساعة).

Writing tips

Organise your thoughts before starting. Brainstorm all related ideas and vocabulary.

نظم أفكارك قبل البدء فى الكتابة. فكر فى مفردات وأفكار مرتبطة بالموضوع.

Example

My family's daily routine

My name's Basmala. I live in the second floor of the new block of flats with my dad, mother, grandma and two brothers. I always get up at 6 o'clock on a school day. My mother always makes my breakfast. I walk to school with my two brothers. My father goes to work at 7:30 am. He works in a school. Sometimes I walk to school with my father. I never go to school late. We usually have lunch at five together. In the evenings, I do my homework. I often play chess with my grandma before I go to bed. I study hard for my exams. I often listen to music. We often go to the park at the weekends. I like to play on the grass there.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about "Your daily routine":

"My daily routine"

My name's ....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 1 — **Reading Text**

Pre-reading question:
- Do you do the same things every day?

1. Read about Mariam. How does she get to school? ***SB page 2***



I'm Mariam. My daily routine[1] is the same every school day! I always get up at 6:30 in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast. I go to school by bus with my friend, Dina. Sometimes we listen to music. My parents work at the hospital. They get home late, so I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework, read on the sofa[2], watch TV and text my friends[3]. Then I go to bed!

روتين/نظام يومى (1)
يقرأ على الأريكة (2)
أراسل أصدقائى برسائل نصية (3)

Post-reading question:
- What are Mariam's evening activities?

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- How do you help at home?

1. Look quickly at the blog. How does Sherifa help at home? ***SB page 4***

My best friend's family



Hi, everyone! Today's interview[1] is with my best friend, Sherifa and her family. Here's a photo of us. Sherifa's on the right.

How many people are in your family, Sherifa?

There are five people: me, Mum, Dad and my two brothers.

When do you get up?

I usually get up at 6:30 and help Mum make breakfast. My brothers help, too. My dad starts work very early, so he leaves home before we get up. That's why he doesn't have breakfast with us. He eats when he gets to work. I walk to school with my brothers.

Do you like to study?

Yes, I do. My favourite subject is English.

What do you do in the evening?

I often listen to music[2]. My dad and I sometimes play chess[3]. My brothers always watch TV and my mum usually reads.

(1) حوار/مقابلة

(2) يستمع للموسيقى

(3) يلعب الشطرنج

Post-reading question:

- Does Sherifa's family sit together in the evening?

Life Skills

How much time do you spend on the following activities every day?

(doing exercise - doing homework - reading on the sofa - sleeping - texting your friends)

Do you think you should spend more or less time on these activities? Why?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like to do my .... exercise in the mornings.
   a) every b) dairy c) diary d) daily
2. My father likes to read stories .... the sofa in the evenings.
   a) at b) on c) to d) in
3. I usually .... my friends to have fun after I do my homework.
   a) text b) test c) make d) read
4. All children like to .... sports in their free time.
   a) make b) play c) spend d) go
5. We do the same thing every day when we're on holiday, because my family like to have a .... WB
   a) joy b) difference c) fun d) routine
6. My brother has an important .... today. He hopes to get the new job.
   a) view b) review c) group d) interview
7. My .... friend is called Waleed. I like him so much.
   a) best b) worst c) ugly d) bad
8. I live in a .... of flats with my parents and two sisters.
   a) packet b) block c) piece d) wall
9. I like to .... to my grandma when she tells us stories before we sleep.
   a) go b) walk c) listen d) get
10. We go to the .... when we want to buy bread.
    a) butcher's b) chemist's c) baker's d) grocer's
11. Young people should learn how to .... their free time usefully.
    a) lose b) have c) do d) spend
12. He went to the station to .... the bus to work.
    a) take b) talk c) ride d) climb
13. Students should study hard .... their exams.
    a) at b) on c) to d) for
14. I usually .... lunch with my mum and talk about my day.
    a) has b) make c) do d) take

Language

Remember

1 The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

- It's used to express habits and facts.

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات وحقائق:

- I play football at the club.
- She cooks fish every week.

Form التكوين

Subject	Verb
I / You / We / They (اسم جمع)	inf.
He / She / It (اسم مفرد)	inf. + s/es/ies

- إذا كان الفاعل مفردًا غائبًا نضيف للفعل (s/ es/ ies).
- إذا كان الفاعل جمعًا أو الضمير (I) نستخدم مصدر الفعل.

Negative النفى

Subject	Verb
I / You / We / They (اسم جمع)	don't + inf.
He / She / It (اسم مفرد)	doesn't + inf.

- I don't walk to school.
- Habiba doesn't like cake.

Question السؤال

1. Yes/ No questions:

	Subject	
Do	I / you / we / they (اسم جمع)	inf. ...?
Does	he / she / it (اسم مفرد)	inf. ...?

- Do you **play** football?
  - Yes, I do./ - No, I don't.
- Does she **cook** every day?
  - Yes, she does./- No, she doesn't.

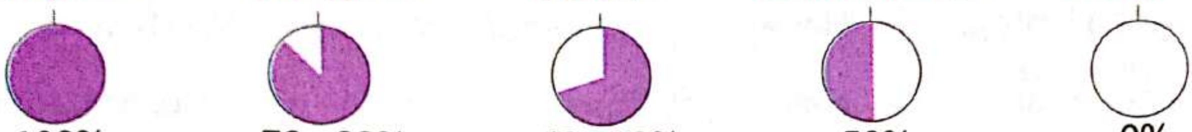
2. Wh-questions:

Q. Word + do/does + sub. + **inf.** ......?

- Where does Ali **live**?
- How do you **go** to school?

2 Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

always دائمًا	usually عادة	often غالبًا	sometimes أحيانًا	never أبدًا



100%	70 - 80%	60 - 70%	50%	0%
★★★★★	☆★★★★	☆☆★★★	☆☆☆★★	☆☆☆☆☆

- نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار فعل ما.

- I **always get up** at 11 o'clock.
- Sally **never has** coffee for breakfast.

لاحظ:

- نستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي.

- He **usually listens** to music on his way to school.

- يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار مع (am/is/are) كالتالي:

Subject + am/is/ are + adv. (ظرف التكرار) + adj. (صفة)

- They **are usually late**.
- Mona **is always clever**.

- عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار نستخدم (How often):

How often { do ▶ (I - you - we - they - اسم جمع) / does ▶ (he - she - it - اسم مفرد) } + inf. + ...?

- How often **does** Nader **walk** to school?
- He **always walks** to school.

3 How to form a question كيفية تكوين سؤال

أولًا: السؤال بمعنى هل (Yes/No question) (هو عبارة عن سؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو فعل ناقص):

We form (Yes/No) questions by: نكوّن السؤال بمعنى (هل) عن طريق:

1. Moving the helping verb to **the beginning** of the sentence:

١- تقديم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل:

1. Verb "to be"

Sentence الجملة	Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
Basma is eating.	▶ **Is** Basma eating?	Yes, she is. / No, he isn't.
They are at school.	▶ **Are** they at school?	Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.

لاحظ أن (Am/ Is/ Are) يتبعها الفاعل ثم اسم أو صفة أو فعل مضاف إليه (ing).

2. "Have/Has got"

Sentence الجملة	Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
I have got a laptop.	▶ Have you got a laptop?	Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
He has got a car.	▶ Has he got a car?	Yes, he has. / No, he hasn't.

لاحظ أن (Have/ Has) يتبعها الفاعل ثم التصريف الثالث للفعل (P.P.).

٢. الجمل فى زمن المضارع أو الماضى البسيط لا تحتوى على فعل مساعد، لذلك نستخدم (Do/Does) مع المضارع البسيط ونستخدم (Did) مع الماضى البسيط.

3. Verb "to do"

Sentence الجملة	Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
They like fish.	▶ Do they like fish?	Yes, they do. / No, they don't.
Ahmed does a sport.	▶ Does Ahmed do a sport?	Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.
Aya made lunch.	▶ Did Aya make lunch?	Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

لاحظ أن (Do/ Does/ Did) يتبعها الفاعل ثم مصدر الفعل.

ثانيًا: السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

- يتكون السؤال بكلمة استفهام كالتالى:

Q. word	helping verb	subject	complement
١- كلمة استفهام	٢- فعل مساعد/ناقص	٣- فاعل	٤- تكملة السؤال

- هناك جمل يكون بها فعل مساعد أو ناقص فيتم تكوين السؤال كالتالى:

Sentence	Question
- Nada is at the park.	- Where is Nada?
- I'd like to have fish.	- What would you like to have?
- They will travel to Aswan next week.	- When will they travel to Aswan?
إذا كانت الجملة ليس بها فعل مساعد نستخدم (do/does) إذا كانت الجملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط:	
- Ola goes to school on foot.	- How does Ola go to school?
أما إذا كانت الجملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط نستخدم (did):	
- Salma bought a new dress last week.	- What did Salma buy last week?

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... have my breakfast with my family. I eat it every day with them.
   a) often b) sometimes c) never d) always
2. Mona .... eats peppers. She doesn't like them at all.
   a) never b) always c) often d) every
3. Children .... playing football on holidays.
   a) usually likes b) usually like c) likes usually d) like usually
4. He .... late for his work.
   a) is never b) never is c) never come d) come never
5. **A:** .... do you live with? **B:** I live with my family.
   a) What b) When c) Whose d) Who
6. **A:** .... your father work at a school? **B:** No, he works in a hospital.
   a) Is b) Does c) Has d) Was
7. **A:** .... people are there in your family? **B:** There are five people.
   a) How many b) How often c) How much d) How long
8. .... children like playing computer games?
   a) Do b) Does c) Are d) Were
9. It .... rain in summer in Egypt.
   a) doesn't never b) doesn't often c) never d) often

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He reads often in the evenings. (.....................)
2. They never are late. They always come on time. (.....................)
3. Mohammed sometimes have lunch at school. (.....................)
4. What time you get up on a school day? (.....................)
5. **A:** You speak English well? **B:** Yes, it's my favourite language. (.....................)

Speaking

Discussing daily routines

مناقشة الروتين اليومى

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response جملة الرد
What time do you get up? متى تستيقظ؟	I always get up at six am. أستيقظ دائمًا فى السادسة صباحًا.
How do you get to school? كيف تصل للمدرسة؟	I usually get to school by bike. عادة أصل بالدراجة.
Where do you live? أين تعيش؟	I live in Alexandria. أعيش فى الإسكندرية.
Who do you live with? مع من تعيش؟	I live with my family. أعيش مع عائلتى.
Do you have any brothers or sisters? هل لديك أى أخوة أو أخوات؟	Yes, I do. I have one brother. نعم. لدى أخ واحد.
Who is older, you or your brother? أيهما أكبر سنًا، أنت أم أخاك؟	I'm older than my brother. أنا أكبر سنًّا من أخى.
What do you do in your free time? ماذا تفعل فى وقت فراغك؟	I usually read a book. عادة أقرأ كتابًا.

Type a message

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

Basma : Hello, Sara. How are you?
Sara : Fine, Basma.
Basma : (1).. do you go to school, Sara?
Sara : I always (2).. to school.
Basma : Why?
Sara : Because it's near my house.
Basma : What do you do in your (3).. time?
Sara : I (4).. help my mum with the housework.
Basma : Great. Do you (5).. any brothers or sisters?
Sara : Yes, I do. I have one sister.

Lessons 1&2 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue: (5)

You : I like to do the same things every day.
A friend : So you have a daily routine?
You : (1).. . I usually get up early.
A friend : (2).. do you usually get up?
You : I always get up at 6:30.
A friend : (3).. do you eat your breakfast with?
You : I (4).. eat breakfast with my father. I eat it with my mother only.
A friend : Why not?
You : (5)............................ my father always goes to work very early. What about you?
A friend : I don't have a routine at all.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (10)

1. We usually .... TV in the evenings.
   a) spend b) watch c) wash d) sleep
2. How much time do you spend .... exercise?
   a) on b) at c) in d) by
3. Come and sit on this..................; four people can sit on it. WB
   a) sofa b) chair c) bed d) wheelchair
4. I saw Ahmed's father on his .... to work this morning. WB
   a) road b) street c) away d) way
5. My little brother likes to .... computer games every day.
   a) take b) catch c) play d) do
6. We do the same things every day. We have a daily ....
   a) routine b) times c) time d) day
7. What activities do you .... at the weekend, Habiba?
   a) make b) do c) get d) go

8. Samira always .... delicious food for her family.
   a) cook b) is cooking c) cooking d) cooks
9. Nader often .... late.
   a) is b) comes c) come d) is coming
10. A: .... does Kareem come to school? B: By bus.
   a) When b) What c) How d) Why

4

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Heidi always is on time. (.........................)
2. Boys often watches sports more than girls. (.........................)
3. Why do you do in your free time? (.........................)
4. How do you live with? (.........................)

SB

6

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your daily routine at the weekend"

لمعرفة كيفية كتابة الموضوع الإنشائى اذهب لملحق التقويم المستمر والمهارات صفحة (38).

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

25

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
......./30			......./25			......./55		
(1-15)	(16-24)	(25-30)	(1-12)	(13-20)	(21-25)	(1-25)	(26-45)	(46-55)

Notes

....
....
....
....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 6-8   WB pages 74 & 75

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3

borrow (ed)	يستعير	life/lives	حياة/حيوات	typical	نموذجى/مثالى
feed the chickens	يطعم الدجاج	tap	صنبور/حنفية	watermelon	بطيخة
knife	سكينة	text message	رسالة نصية		

Lesson 4

adventure	مغامرة	poor	فقير	terrible	فظيع/سيئ جدًا
attractive	جذاب	prison	سجن		
large	كبير/ضخم	railway line	خط سكة حديد		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3

Alexandria	الإسكندرية	goat	عنزة	picnic	نزهة
biscuits	بسكويت	grandparents	أجداد	profile	الملف الشخصى
city	مدينة كبيرة	India	الهند (دولة)	Role-play	لعبة تقمص الأدوار
cousin	ابن/ابنة (العم/العمة/الخال/الخالة)	London	لندن (مدينة)	street	شارع
Egyptian	مصرى	marry (y-ied)	يتزوج	the country	الريف
English teacher	مدرس لغة إنجليزية	Odd one out	الشيء المختلف	village	قرية
garden	حديقة (المنزل)	one day	ذات يوم	water (ed)	يروى/يسقى

Lesson 4

finally	أخيرًا/فى النهاية	simple	بسيط	together	سويًا/معًا
near	بالقرب من	story	قصة	travel (led)	يسافر

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 3

do ▶ a job	يؤدى وظيفة	take ▶ turns	يتبادل الأدوار

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 3

around the world	حول العالم	in a shop	فى محل	in the summer	فى الصيف
at the end of	فى نهاية	in the house	فى المنزل	on TV	فى التلفاز
careful with	حريص على	in the mountains	فى الجبال	share with	يشارك مع

Lesson 4

at last	أخيرًا	full of	ملىء بـ	on the train	فى القطار
at the beginning (of)	فى بداية	in many ways	بطرق كثيرة	take away from	يُبعد عن
different for	مختلف بالنسبة لـ	move from	ينتقل من		

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 3

borrow	يستعير/يستلف	lend	يسلف	outside	خارج	inside	داخل
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل	remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى

Lesson 4

attractive	جذاب	ugly	قبيح	large	كبير	small	صغير
good	جيد	terrible	فظيع	near = close	قريب	far	بعيد
happy ending	نهاية سعيدة	sad ending	نهاية حزينة	old	كبير السن	young	صغير السن
kind	عطوف/طيب	unkind	غير عطوف	poor	فقير	rich	غنى

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 3			
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
feed	يُطعم	fed	fed
find	يجد	found	found
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
tell	يخبر	told	told
Lesson 4			
become	يصبح	became	become
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
know	يعرف	knew	known

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 4

attractive	جذاب	beautiful
large	كبير	very big
poor	فقراء	people without enough money
prison	سجن	a place where people go when they do something wrong
railway line	خط سكة حديد	the road that a train travels on
terrible	فظيع/سيئ جدًا	very bad

Language Notes

1 Shall we + inf. ....? هل (تستخدم لتقديم اقتراح)

- Shall we play a game?

2 Can I + inf. ....? هل يمكننى (تستخدم عند طلب شىء)

- Can I borrow your camera, please?

3 Have you got ....? هل لديك / تمتلك.......؟

- Have you got a car?

4 1900s فى القرن العشرين

- This story was written in the 1900s.

5 with ذو /لديه (تستخدم عند الوصف)

- They have a big home with a large garden.

6 family أسرة/عائلة

تعامل هذه الكلمة معاملة المفرد إذا كانت تعنى الأسرة كلها كوحدة واحدة.

- My family **has** a big house.

وتعامل هذه الكلمة معاملة الجمع إذا كانت تعنى الأسرة كأفراد.

- My family **are** either doctors or teachers.

7 for + -ing/n. بسبب/من أجل

- Their father was in prison for **doing** something bad.

8 My six-year-old cousin

لاحظ عدم جمع كلمة (year) لأنها هنا تستخدم كصفة لكلمة (cousin) والصفة لا تجمع.

- My six-year-old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sister is tall .... blue eyes.
   a) in b) with c) off d) on
2. The teacher was very angry with Nabil .... coming late again.
   a) by b) to c) on d) for

Write it right

How to write about your house

كيفية الكتابة عن منزلك

- I'm (الاسم).
- I live with (الأشخاص).
- My house is (الوصف).
- I like to (الأنشطة التى تقوم بها فى المنزل).
- My father works in (المكان).
- I help my mother with the housework.
- I go to bed at (الساعة).

Writing tips

After brainstorming ideas and related vocabulary, start thinking about a good introduction for your paragraph.

بعد تحديد الأفكار والمفردات المرتبطة بالفقرة ابدأ بالتفكير فى مقدمة جيدة للموضوع.

Example

My house

My name's Shahenda. I live with my parents and my sister in a large house with a beautiful garden. It's in the village. I share a room with my sister. We all get up early. I like to water the flowers and plants in the garden. I get water from an outside tap. My dad works on the farm. He grows vegetables and fruits. We all have breakfast in the garden and drink tea. My sister likes to feed the chickens and collect the eggs. I help my mother with the housework. I do my homework after dinner. Sometimes I help my sister with her homework. I go to bed at ten o'clock.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about "Your home":

"My home"

I'm Adel. I live in ....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- How do you help your family around the house?

1. Read the profile quickly. Which of the three questions is Shahana answering?

SB page 6

Lives around the world

Tell us about your life!

- What are your hobbies[1] and interests[2]?
- What is a typical[3] day in your life?
- What job do you want to do one day?

My name's Shahana. I'm from India. I live in a village with my parents, my brother and my sister.

I share[4] a room with my sister. We all get up early. There is an outside tap[5] at the end of street where we live. My mum gets water from the tap every morning. Then we all have breakfast. We have bread with a cup of tea. My dad works in a shop.



I have two jobs to do when I get home from school. I feed[6] the chickens, then I help my mum make dinner. After dinner, I do my homework. Sometimes I help my brother and sister to do their homework, too. Then I go to bed.

(1) هوايات
(2) اهتمامات
(3) نموذجي/مثالي
(4) يشارك
(5) حنفية/صنبور
(6) يُطعم

Post-reading question:
- Do you think Shahana is helpful? Why?

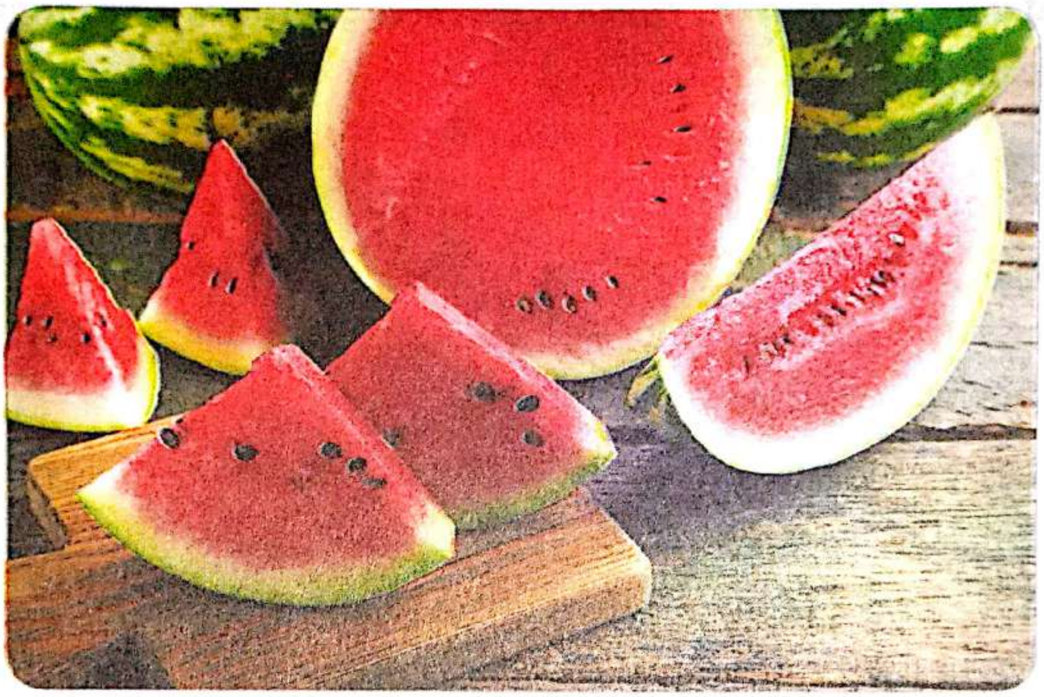
Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What kind of fruit do you like?

6. Read the conversation and answer the questions. SB page 7



Yunis : Grandma, have you got a watermelon [1] ?

Grandma : Yes, I have. It's on the table.

Yunis : Can I have some, please? I like watermelon.

Grandma : Yes, of course. We need a knife [2] to cut it!

Yunis : Shall I help you to cut it?

Grandma : Thank you, Yunis, but be careful [3] with the knife!

(1) بطيخة
(2) سكينه
(3) حريص/حذر

Post-reading question:

- Why should we be careful with the knife?

Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite game?

7. Complete the text message with can, shall or have you got. *SB page 7*

Hi, Amal. Have you got that game called *Odd one out*?

No! I don't play that game now. It's for young children.

Have you got any other children's games? My six-year-old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me.

Yes, I have *Role-play*! Do you remember that game?

Yes, I do! Can I borrow it this evening? My cousin would love it!

Of course. Shall I play it, too? It's better with three people, and I still enjoy that game.

Of course! You can come to my house later.

Type a message

Post-reading question:

- What game has Amal got?

Lesson 4 — Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- What kind of stories do you like reading?

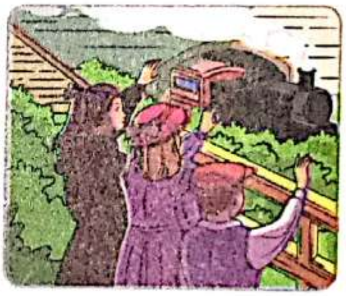
2. Read the story and put these pictures in the correct order. ***SB page 8***

The Railway Children *by E Nesbit*



It is the 1900s. Roberta, her younger brother Peter and their little sister, Phyllis, live with their parents in London. They have a big, attractive[1] home with a large garden. One terrible[2] day, two men take their father away from home. The children do not know where he is going or why.

جذاب (1)
فظيع (2)
خط سكة حديد (3)
فقراء (4)
مغامرات (5)
سجن (6)



The children move from the city with their mother to a small house near a railway line[3]. The family are poor[4] and life is very different for them.

The children have lots of adventures[5] near the railway line. A kind old man, who travels on the train every day, becomes their friend.



The old man helps the family in many ways. He helps their father too, because their father is in prison[6] for something he did not do. Finally, their father comes home. The family is so happy to be together again at last.

Post-reading question:
- What do you think of the old man?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They became very poor, so .... was different for them.
   a) life b) live c) leave d) alive
2. I have a/an .... day. I get up at six, have my breakfast and go to school as usual.
   a) terrible b) different c) typical d) ugly
3. We get water from ....
   a) tubes b) tabs c) tapes d) taps
4. We have a small farm and I like to .... the chickens there.
   a) feed b) eat c) leave d) stay
5. Young people like to write text .... to their friends.
   a) emails b) passages c) messages d) massages
6. My friend's aunt is very .... , she is old but beautiful.
   a) ugly b) attractive c) boring d) excited
7. Can I .... your pen for a minute?
   a) lend b) borrow c) give d) play
8. They camped in the mountains last weekend, so they had many ....
   a) adventures b) experiments c) developments d) movements
9. If people do something wrong, they go to ....
   a) bakery b) school c) hospital d) prison
10. Trains travel on .... lines.
    a) railway b) airway c) mail d) post
11. There was a/an .... accident on the road. Twelve people were killed.
    a) attractive b) terrible c) good d) usual
12. I .... a room with my sister.
    a) share b) take c) divide d) spill
13. You should be careful .... your money.
    a) at b) for c) of d) with
14. The woman cut up the .... and shared it out among the four children.
    a) rice b) sugar c) watermelon d) grape

Lessons 3 & 4 General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Where does Shahana come from?
   a) Malaysia. b) China. c) India. d) Africa.
2. What do they have for breakfast?
   a) Bread. b) Cheese.
   c) Eggs and bread. d) Bread and cheese.
3. Does she sleep alone in her room?
   a) No. b) Yes.
   c) Maybe. d) I don't know.
4. What time do they all get up?
   a) At 11 am. b) At 8 am. c) At 4 pm. d) At 6 am.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. They were very sad because a man took their father .... from their home.
   a) away b) way c) across d) cross
2. Everyone should have a job to ....
   a) do b) make c) have d) give
3. A .... is a place where people go when they do something wrong.
   a) clinic b) workshop c) prison d) hospital
4. We have a house with a .... garden. There are lots of trees.
   a) small b) large c) tiny d) little
5. Roberta feels .... when some men take their father from their home. WB
   a) terrible b) glad c) pleased d) boring
6. The family don't have much money and now they are .... WB
   a) poor b) rich c) ugly d) boring
7. This .... cuts well, doesn't it?
   a) knife b) fork c) spoon d) brush
8. My grandmother always .... for a walk in the evening.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) is going

9 Walaa .... her mother in the kitchen.

a) helps usually
b) help usually
c) usually help
d) usually helps

10 We .... watch TV in the afternoon. We always watch it before we go to bed.

a) never
b) usually
c) often
d) sometimes

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1 We go sometimes to the theatre at the weekend. (.........................)
2 Tamer usually is very friendly. (.........................)
3 We always takes the same bus to school. (.........................)
4 Nada don't usually get up before seven. (.........................) WB

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

6

"Jobs you do at home"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

24

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
.... / 30			.... / 24			.... / 54		
(1-15)	(16-24)	(25-30)	(1-11)	(12-20)	(21-24)	(1-25)	(26-45)	(46-54)

Notes

....
....
....
....

Lessons 5&6

SB pages 9 - 11 WB pages 76 - 78

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 5

armchair	كرسى ذو مساند	cupboard	دولاب	mirror	مرآة
basin	حوض	curtains	ستائر	sofa	أريكة/كنبة
bookshelf	رف الكتب	cushions	وسائد	wardrobe	دولاب ملابس
carpet	سجادة	lamp	مصباح		
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	match (ed)	يطابق/يتماشى مع		

Prepositions of place حروف جر المكان

above	فوق	in front of	أمام	on	على
behind	خلف	near	بالقرب من	opposite	مواجه لـ
in	فى	next to	بجوار	under	تحت

Lesson 6

half past	ونصف	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	penfriend	صديق بالمراسلة

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 5

bathroom	حمّام	describe (d)	يصف	like best	يحبه أفضل
bedroom	حجرة نوم	description	وصف	picture	صورة
clothes	ملابس	drawer	درج	sunlight	ضوء الشمس

Lesson 6

best wishes	أفضل الأمنيات	Germany	ألمانيا	shopping	التسوق
Cambridge	كامبريدج (مدينة)	hope (d)	يأمل	website	موقع إلكترونى
El Faiyoum	الفيوم (مدينة)	information	معلومات	work hard	يعمل بجد
enjoy (ed)	يتمتع بـ	Oxford	أكسفورد (مدينة)		

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 5

give ▶ light	تعطى ضوءًا	wash ▶ her face	تغسل وجهها
keep ▶ clothes	يحفظ الملابس	watch ▶ videos	يشاهد أفلام الفيديو

Lesson 6

breakfast break	استراحة الإفطار	sell ▶ food and drinks	يبيع الأطعمة والمشروبات
get ▶ dressed	يرتدى ملابسه	visit ▶ a friend	يزور صديقًا
practise ▶ English	يمارس اللغة الإنجليزية	write ▶ a reply to	يكتب ردًا على

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 5

on the front	فى المقدمة	on the computer	على الكمبيوتر
belong to	تخص/تنتمى لـ	look out of	ينظر من
on a bookshelf	على رف الكتب	read in bed	يقرأ فى الفراش
on the floor	على أرضية الغرفة	with the curtains open	مع ستائر مفتوحة

Lesson 6

a short walk from	على مسافة قصيرة من	look for	يبحث عن
write to	يكتب إلى		

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 6

comfortable مريح	uncomfortable غير مريح	start يبدأ	finish ينهى
nearby مجاور/قريب	far بعيد	upstairs الطابق العلوى	downstairs الطابق السفلى

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Lesson 6

Present		Past simple	Past participle
keep	يحفظ/يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
send	يرسل	sent	sent
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Language Notes

1 **would ('d) love/like to + inf.** يود أن

- I'd love to **visit** the nature reserves near El Faiyoum.
- I'd like to **have** a cup of coffee.

2 **Thanks for/Thank you for + n/v.-ing** شكرا على

- Thank you for **sending** me your profile.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Thanks for your ....
   a) help b) helping
   c) to help d) to helping
2. I'd love .... a doctor in the future.
   a) becoming b) become
   c) to becoming d) to become

Write it right

How to describe your bedroom

كيفية وصف غرفة نومك

- I live in (المكان).
- Our flat is (الوصف).
- It has got (الغرف).
- My bedroom is (الوصف).
- It has (الأشياء التى بها).
- My bed is (مكانه).
- The mirror is (مكانها).

Writing tips

Make sure you are writing in the right tense. The prompt will guide you.
تأكد من استخدام الزمن المناسب فى الكتابة. (تعرف عليه من خلال العنوان).

To : **Adam**
From : **Karim**
Subject : **My bedroom**

Hi Adam,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about my family. I live in a flat with my family. It has got two bedrooms, a dining room, a kitchen and a living room and a bathroom. It's in a big city. Our flat is very comfortable. My bedroom has a big window with curtains. When I open the curtains, the room is very bright with sunlight. My bed is under the window. I have a wardrobe in front of the bed. I put my clothes there. There is a mirror next to the wardrobe. There's also a lamp next to the bed. The bathroom is next to my bedroom. It's big. It has a nice basin there.
In the evenings, I like to read in bed or watch TV. Sometimes I sleep with the curtains open.

Write soon.

Karim

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Samy about your bedroom. Your name is Malek.

Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Do you have a room of your own? Can you describe it?

3. Listen to two descriptions. Which room is each person describing?

SB page 9

جذاب (1)
لمبة (2)
رف الكتب (3)
دولاب ملابس (4)
مرآة (5)
ستائر (6)
سجادة (7)
وسائد (8)
كرسي ذو مساند (9)
خزانة ذات أدراج (10)
حوض (11)

Narrator 1



Boy: My room is small, but it's really attractive[1]. I have a lamp[2] on a bookshelf[3] next to my bed so I can read at night. I have a wardrobe[4] with a mirror[5] on the front, and my desk is under the window. Do you like my curtains[6]? The colour matches the carpet[7].

The best thing about my room is the sofa. I can sit there and read or watch videos on my computer.

Narrator 2



Girl: My bed is under the window. There are cushions[8] on it! Sometimes I sleep with the curtains open because I like to look out of the window! I've got lots of books, and I like to sit and read in the big armchair[9]. I keep some clothes in the chest of drawers[10]. Our bathroom is downstairs, but I have a basin[11] in my room, where I can wash my face before I go to bed.

Post-listening question:

- Spot 3 differences between the two rooms.

Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Which is your favourite room in the house? Why?

2. Listen and complete the description of the bedroom. *WB page 76*



Girl: I like my parents' bedroom. When they open the curtains, there is always lots of sunlight in the room. Their bed is under the window. In front of the bed they have a big wardrobe. My mum puts her dresses in there. There is also an armchair next to the window. My dad sometimes reads his book here. He puts his clothes in a big chest of drawers. This is behind the door. They don't have a basin in their room because the bathroom is next to their room, but they have a big mirror. My sister always likes to look at herself in it!

Post-listening question:

- Why does the girl like her parents' bedroom?

Lesson 6

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- Do you like having a penfriend? What do you write to him about?

1. Read the email. Why does Judy want a penfriend? ***SB page 10***

Dear Rebecca,



It is very nice to meet you. I'm from El Faiyoum, in Egypt. It's a large city, with beautiful nature reserves[1] nearby. I live with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents live in a flat downstairs.

On Saturdays, I usually get up early and help my grandmother with her shopping, then I read or do my homework. In the afternoons, I visit my friends or play computer games with my brother.

My favourite subjects are maths and English. Thank you for being my penfriend[2]. I'm happy to practise my English!

I hope to hear from you soon.

Judy

(1) محميات طبيعية

(2) صديق بالمراسلة

Post-reading question:

- Why does Judy want to have a penfriend?

Life Skills

1. How often do you see your grandparents?

....

2. How can grandparents help young people in the family, and how can you help them?

....

Lesson 6

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- If you have a penfriend, what would you like to write to him about?

2. Put this email to a penfriend in the correct order. *WB page 77*

Hi Leila



b. [1] Thank you for sending me your profile. Here is some information about me. I live with my parents and my two sisters in Oxford. We live in a house but we don't have a garden. Does your home have a garden?

a. [2] Without a garden, I often go to the park at the weekends. I love taking photos of the birds there. Do you have many birds where you live?

d. [3] I enjoy my school and I have many friends there. The school is a short walk from my house. Is your school nearby, or is it far from your home?

c. [4] I hope you can write to me again soon and please answer my questions!

Best wishes.

Mariana

Post-reading question: - What is Mariana's favourite hobby?

Lesson 7 — Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - How many lessons do you have every day?

1. Complete the emails with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

SB page 11

Hi Abdul!

Thanks for being my penfriend. I'm from England. I get up at about half past seven, and then my mum makes breakfast for the family.

I walk to school with my brother. Our school finishes at three o'clock. After school, we sometimes do sports or play music.

I don't watch TV when I get home. I always do my homework first.

Tell me about your typical daily routine in Germany!

Hi Dan!

Thanks for your email.
In Germany, school starts very early in the morning. So, I don't have breakfast before school. There's a "breakfast break" after the first lesson. How many lessons does your school have every day?

Post-reading question: - Where is Dan from?

Lesson 7 — Reading Text

3. Complete the text with words from the picture: ***SB page 11***

I love my bedroom! I have a big white wardrobe in the corner. Next to it, there is a mirror. I look at myself in it in the mornings. I also have a small bookshelf where I put my books.

Next to this, there is a big window. I have blue curtains on this. I close them at night. I also have a red lamp next to my bed. I use it to read before I go to sleep.

Also in my bedroom, there is a grey armchair. I sit and read my book there sometimes. There is also a cupboard. I put my T-shirts, socks and other clothes in this. Finally, there is a big carpet on the floor!

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are four .... on the sofa.
   a) chairs b) cushions c) tables d) windows
2. We have a beautiful .... on the floor in front of the living room.
   a) fridge b) curtain c) carpet d) TV
3. I have a .... of drawers where I can put many things.
   a) chest b) test c) box d) piece
4. My little sister always looks at the .... to see herself in it.
   a) drawer b) carpet c) wardrobe d) mirror
5. My mother has a big .... to put her dresses in.
   a) carpet b) curtain c) drawer d) wardrobe
6. There's a big .... in the bathroom where we wash up.
   a) bath b) basin c) shower d) tap
7. I have a .... in my bedroom to put all my books on.
   a) wardrobe b) mirror c) bookshelf d) carpet
8. I'd like to sit .... to my mother when we eat.
   a) above b) in front c) under d) next
9. I always put a bottle of water in .... of me when I study.
   a) front b) near c) between d) next
10. Students should .... English every day to be perfect at it.
    a) tell b) practise c) send d) forget
11. This isn't your book. It .... to your sister. Don't play with it.
    a) gives b) belongs c) owns d) spends
12. Some students go to school very early, so they don't have breakfast at home. They have a breakfast .... at school.
    a) break b) stop c) rest d) relax
13. My school is a short .... from my house. It's very near.
    a) fly b) ride c) drive d) walk
14. El Faiyoum has many .... reserves which you can visit.
    a) traditional b) tradition c) nature d) natural

Lessons 5&6

General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Judy : Do you live in a flat or a house?

Jana : I live in a house (1)................................ a large garden.

Judy : Fantastic! How (2)................................ rooms do you have?

Jana : We've got three rooms, a bathroom and a kitchen.

Judy : Have you got a bedroom of your own?

Jana : No. I (3)................................ a room with my sister.

Judy : How (4)................................ you like your bedroom?

Jana : It's very comfortable. It has a big window and a wardrobe.

Judy : (5)................................ there curtains in your room?

Jana : Yes, there are.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. Many young men look .... jobs to earn enough money.
   a) at b) after c) up d) for
2. I get up early to .... dressed and go to school on time.
   a) get b) do c) have d) make
3. I'd like to find a .... friend to practise English with.
   a) pencil b) ruler c) pen d) marker
4. He has a small shop in the city centre. He .... food and drinks.
   a) sells b) buys c) borrows d) spends
5. My friend asked me to write a .... to his email.
   a) message b) replay c) reply d) display
6. We have a big house where we live upstairs, but my grandparents live ....
   a) downstairs b) under stairs c) on the roof d) underground
7. .... are put on the floor.
   a) Carpets b) Curtains c) Mirrors d) Lamps
8. Nermin and you never .... computer games with me.
   a) play b) plays c) is playing d) are playing

9 The school bus .... arrives at half past eight. It's on time on all days.

a) never b) always c) often d) every

10 I .... visit my grandparents on Sunday afternoons.

a) every b) next c) ago d) always

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1 A: Why do you live, Mazin? B: In Minya. (............................)

2 A: What time do your father go to work? B: At 9 every day. (............................)

3 Tarek don't like football matches. (............................)

4 Do you walks to school every day? (............................)

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) to your friend Ahmed to tell him about your house. Your name is Tamer.

6

لمعرفة كيفية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكترونى اذهب لملحق التقويم المستمر والمهارات صفحة (39).

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

25

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
.... / 30			.... / 25			.... / 55		
(1-15)	(16-24)	(25-30)	(1-12)	(13-20)	(21-25)	(1-25)	(26-45)	(46-55)

Notes

....

....

....

....

Video Script

This is a chair from Ancient Egypt, and it is more than four thousand years old. Like many chairs today, it is made from wood.

In Ancient Egypt, only the richest people had wooden furniture because it was very expensive. Today, most people have wooden furniture (1) and it is not usually very expensive.

We all sit on chairs at home. But in Ancient Egypt, only very rich people used chairs. Other people sat on the floor.

Here is another chair from Ancient Egypt. It is made from wood, but it is covered in (2) gold (3). Can you see the lions' heads? It belonged to (4) the pharaoh, Tutankhamun (5). You can see it in the Museum of Egyptian Antiquities (6) in Cairo.

We believe (7) that the Ancient Egyptians made the very first tables. This table is more than 3,000 years old.

Today, tables are usually made from wood. But in Ancient Egypt, they were sometimes made from stone. They used tables for many things, such as writing, eating and playing games.

The Ancient Egyptians also used mirrors. Today, mirrors are usually made from glass. This mirror is more than 3,000 years old and it is made from metal.

Do you look at yourself in a mirror when you leave home?

What other furniture do you have at home?

0:00

(1) أثاث خشبي
(2) يغطى بـ
(3) الذهب
(4) يخص/ينتمي إلى
(5) الفرعون توت عنخ أمون
(6) متحف الآثار المصرية
(7) يعتقد

Unit 1 Review

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
a block of flats	عمارة سكنية	feed the chickens	يُطعم الدجاج	poor	فقير
adventure	مغامرة	half past	ونصف	prison	سجن
armchair	كرسى ذو مساند	have lunch	يتناول الغداء	profile	الملف الشخصى
attractive	جذاب	help to make dinner	يساعد فى إعداد العشاء	railway line	خط سكة حديد
basin	حوض	interview	مقابلة/حوار	read on the sofa	يقرأ على الأريكة/الكنبة
best friend	صديق مقرب	lamp	مصباح	research	بحث
bookshelf	رف الكتب	large	كبير/ضخم	routine	روتين/نظام يومى
breakfast break	استراحة الإفطار	listen to music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى	simple	بسيط
carpet	سجادة	marry (ied)	يتزوج	tap	صنبور/حنفية
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	match (ed)	يطابق/يتماشى مع	terrible	فظيع/سيئ جدًا
cupboard	دولاب	mirror	مرآة	text friends	يراسل الأصدقاء برسائل نصية
curtains	ستائر	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	text message	رسالة نصية
cushions	وسائد	penfriend	صديق بالمراسلة	typical	نموذجى/مثالى
English teacher	مدرس لغة إنجليزية	play sports	يلعب رياضة	wardrobe	دولاب ملابس

Language

1 *The present simple tense*

- **Sara** walks to school every day. She doesn't **cycle.**
- **They** go to school on foot. They don't **take** a bus.
- **Does** Kamal study English every day?
- **How often** do you do a sport?

2 *Adverbs of frequency*



3 *How to form a question*

Q. Word + helping/auxiliary verb + Subj. + inf. ..?

- **When** did **you** buy this laptop?

Speaking

Discussing daily routines

- What time do you get up?
  - I always get up at six am.
- How do you get to school?
  - I usually get to school by bike.
- What do you do in your free time?
  - I usually read a book.

Al-Azhar Corner

Based on Unit 1 أسئلة خاصة بأبنائنا طلبة الأزهر الشريف

1) Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

A) Anwar : How often do you get up early?

Ali : ....

B) Sawsan : ....?

Samar : I play chess in my free time.

2) Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. My daily routine is	a) you get up?
2. What time is	b) from your window.
3. I usually	c) jobs to do when I go home.
4. I have two	d) get up early and help mum.
5. You can see the Nile	e) the same every school day.
	f) your first lesson this morning?

Answers: 1. (   ) 2. (   ) 3. (   ) 4. (   ) 5. (   )

3) Write a paragraph of about (7) sentences on:

"Your daily routine"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 1

Cumulative Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Who do you play computer games with?
   a) My brother. b) My father. c) My sister. d) My mother.
2. When do you visit your friends?
   a) At night. b) In the evenings.
   c) In the mornings. d) In the afternoons.
3. What time do you get up on Saturdays?
   a) Late. b) Early.
   c) In the afternoon. d) At night.
4. Who do you help with the shopping?
   a) My mother. b) My grandfather.
   c) My grandmother. d) My friends.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Nawal : Hi, Amal. Did you have the English lesson yesterday?
Amal : (1).., because I was ill.
Nawal : Oh no! (2).. you see a doctor?
Amal : Yes, of course.
Nawal : (3).. did he tell you?
Amal : He told me that I should have enough sleep.
Nawal : (4).. hours of sleep should we have?
Amal : About 8 hours a day.
Nawal : I (5).. sleep for 8 hours.
Amal : That's good.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

6

My name is Sami. I am thirteen years old and live in Alexandria, Egypt. I usually wake up at 6 in the morning. First of all, I wash my face and brush my teeth. After that, I get dressed, then eat a cheese sandwich with cold milk for breakfast. Next, I carry my bag and go to school. I always start school at 8 in the morning and then have a lunch break and talk to my friends. Next, I finish school around 3 in the afternoon, then I wait for the school bus. I arrive home at 3:30 and have some rest. Finally, I usually do my homework, have my milk, and go to bed at 9 pm.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What time does Sami start school?

....

2. How does Sami go to school?

....

3. When does he arrive home?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Sami eats .... for breakfast.
   a) cheese with milk
   b) cheese with tea
   c) cheese
   d) milk
5. Sami is in a .... school.
   a) nursery
   b) primary
   c) preparatory
   d) secondary
6. Sami's house is .... his school.
   a) near b) far from c) opposite d) in front of

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. A .... is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes. WB
   a) wardrobe b) mirror c) drawer d) carpet
2. My mother .... her clothes in a big wardrobe.
   a) keeps b) stays c) sits d) loses
3. .... give us light. WB
   a) Lips b) Lambs c) Lamps d) Limps
4. You can see yourself in the .... WB
   a) lamp b) mirror c) carpet d) curtain
5. On a .... day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother in her jobs. WB
   a) electrical
   b) typical
   c) technical
   d) technological
6. Roberta's family home in the city is big and .... It is really nice. WB
   a) ugly b) attractive c) boring d) terrible

7 In Germany, there's a breakfast .... after the first lesson.

a) brake b) park c) break d) bark

8 All children .... football on holidays.

a) usually plays b) usually play
c) plays usually d) play usually

9 .... Mai like feeding the chickens?

a) Do b) Does c) Are d) Were

10 **A:** .... do you walk to school? **B:** Because it's near.

a) When b) Why
c) How d) Where

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1 He reads often in the evenings. (.........................)
2 **A:** Why do you go to work? **B:** By bus. (.........................)
3 My brother don't cycle to school. (.........................)
4 They do not always plays tennis on Sundays. (.........................)

WB

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

6

"Your usual day"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

35

Unit 1

Research Projects

1. Your daily routine

Do a research on "Your daily routine".

Use these guiding points to help you:

- Introduce your daily activities./ Are they different in the summer than in the winter?
- When do you get up?/ What time do you eat your meals?/ What do you do in your free time?
- Who cooks? What do you do to help around the house?
- The best time your penfriend can come and visit you.



2. A description of your house

Do a research on "A description of your house".

Use these guiding points to help you:

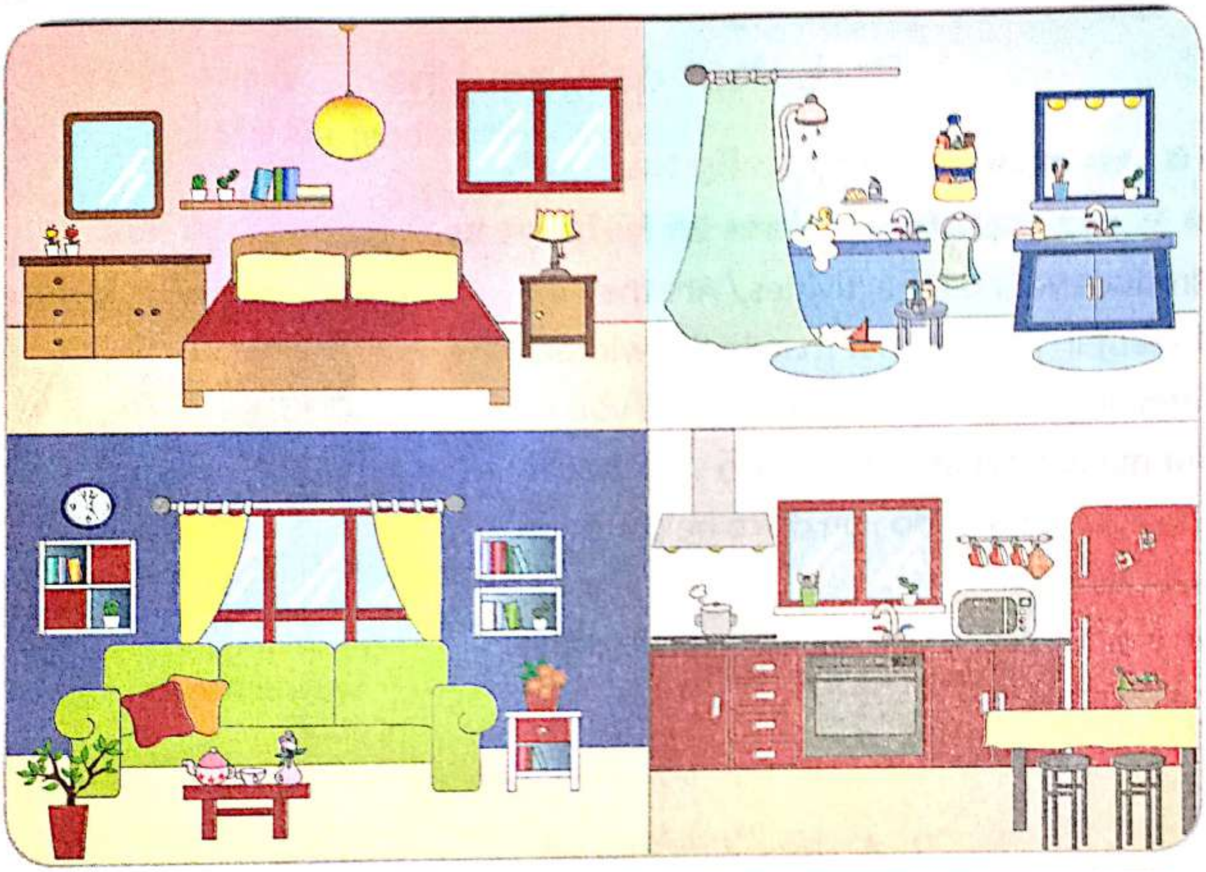
- Draw a map of your house where you show and describe all the rooms.
- Describe the house./ Where is it?/ Is it old or new?
- How many rooms are there?/ Is it comfortable or not? Why?

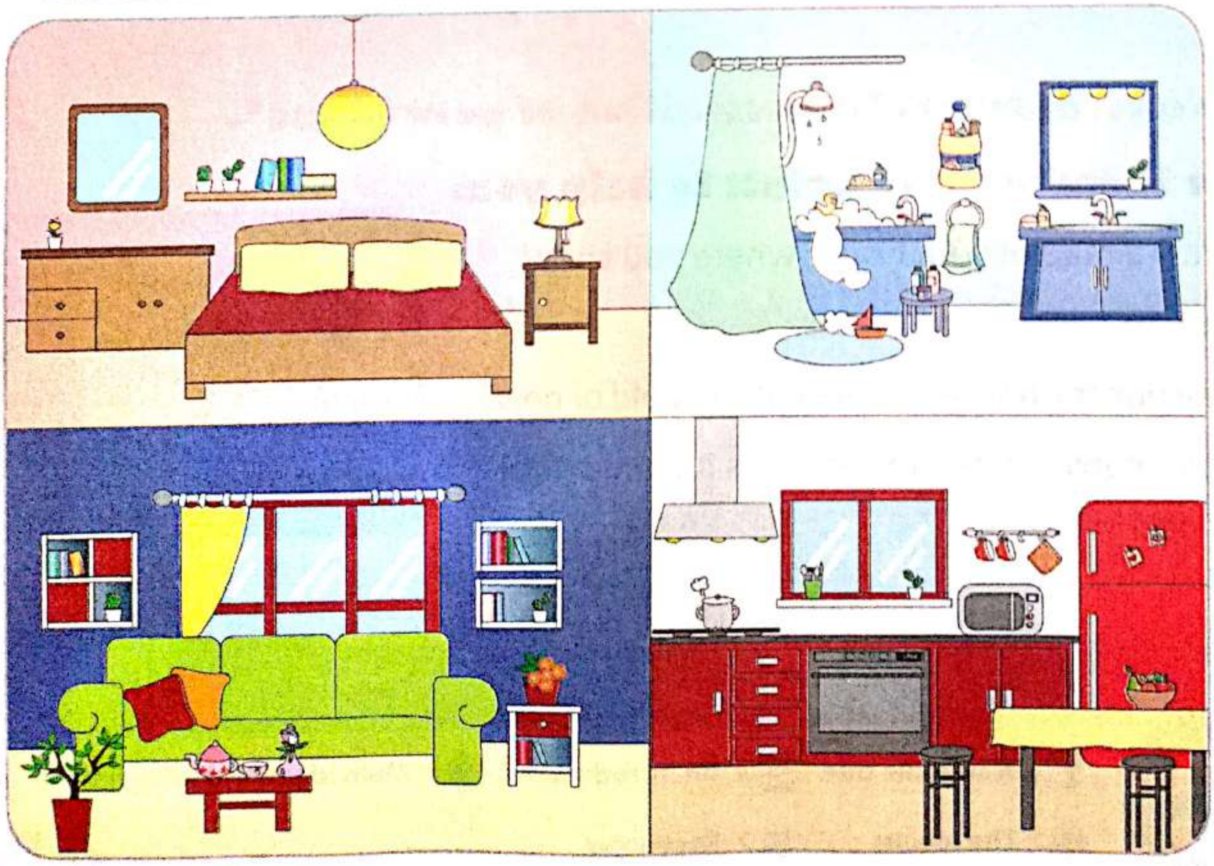


Research steps

1. A suitable title
2. An introduction
3. Main ideas and information
4. The results
5. Resources

Look at the pictures and find 12 differences:







Unit 2 How are you feeling?

Objectives of the unit

Reading : A text about night workers; description of weekend activities; an article about happiness for teenagers; an informal email
Writing : An email to a friend
Listening : People talking about learning new skills; descriptions of photos
Speaking : Describing photos; responding to news
Language : Adverbs of manner
Life Skills : Empathy

Tapescript

تشير لأسئلة المتميزين SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 12-15 WB pages 79 & 80

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1

food stall	كشك الطعام	patients	المرضى	wave (d) (to)	يلوح بيده (لـ)
park (ed)	يركن السيارة	ward	جناح/قسم		

Jobs الوظائف

call-centre worker	عامل مركز الاتصال	nurse	ممرضة	shop worker	عامل المحل
computer engineer	مهندس كمبيوتر	police officer	ضابط شرطة	street-food seller	بائع طعام بالشارع

Lesson 2

art club	نادى الفن	deaf	أصم	sail (ed)	يبحر
artist	فنان	lazy	كسول	sewing	الخياطة/الحياكة
calligraphy	فن الخط	neighbour	جار	sign language	لغة الإشارة
cook	طاهٍ/طباخ	repair (ed)	يصلح	skill	مهارة

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1

a bit	قليلاً	Canada	دولة كندا	tonight	هذه الليلة

Lesson 2

boat	قارب	lovely	جميل/رائع	stay (ed)	يبقى/يقيم/يظل
fantastic	رائع	Minya	محافظة المنيا	surprise	مفاجأة
flat	شقة	present	هدية	traditional	تقليدى

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 1

do/play	sports	يمارس رياضة	have/take	a rest	يأخذ راحة
give	a surprise	يفاجئ	make	sure	يتأكد
get	ready	يستعد			

Lesson 2

make	a calligraphy book	يعد كتاب فن الخط	take	long	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا
paint	the kitchen	يدهن المطبخ			

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 1

a problem with	مشكلة بـ	go on a school trip	يذهب فى رحلة مدرسية	on the top shelf	على الرف العلوى
by the fountain	بجوار النافورة	look after	يعتنى بـ	seem to + inf.	يبدو أن
drive around	يقوم بجولة بالسيارة	look forward to	يتطلع إلى	tin of beans	علبة فول

Lesson 2

at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	excited about	متحمس بخصوص
communicate with	يتواصل مع	on a boat	فى قارب

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 1

busy	مزدحم/مشغول	free	فارغ	safe	آمن	dangerous	خطير
hungry	جوعان	full	ممتلئ / شبعان				

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Lesson 1

Present		Past simple	Past participle
drive	يقود/يسوق	drove	driven
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
hurt	يصيب/يؤذى/يؤلم	hurt	hurt

Lesson 2

spend	يقضى/ينفق	spent	spent
swim	يسبح/يعوم	swam	swum
teach	يُعلم/يُدرس	taught	taught
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Language Notes

1 **feel + adj.** يشعر بـ

- I'm feeling **tired** tonight.

2 **look forward to + v-ing/n.** يتطلع إلى

- I look forward to **going** home and having a rest.
- He looks forward to **his new job.**

3 **adjectives ending with (ing/ed)**

عند وصف الكائن الحى (إنسان/طائر/حيوان) نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) أو بـ (ed)

- نستخدم (ing) إذا كان الكائن الحى يسبب الصفة. -نستخدم (ed) إذا كان الكائن الحى يشعر بالصفة.

- The lion is standing in front of the goats. The lion is frightening. The goats are frightened.
- I'm feeling bored.

4 **start/begin + (to + inf.) / (-ing)** يبدأ

- People start **to buy (buying)** their breakfast at 6 am.

5 **look + adj.** يبدو

- He looks **tired** today.
- Your car looks very **nice**.

6 **learn to + inf.** يتعلم أن

- I'm learning to **sail**.

7 **enjoy + v-ing/n.** يستمتع بـ

- He enjoys **spending** time with his grandmother. He enjoys **his time** with her.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I met some .... people last weekend.
   a) interested b) interesting c) bored d) excited
2. Ali looks forward .... his new job.
   a) get b) getting c) got d) to getting

Write it right

How to write about the job you like
كيفية الكتابة عن الوظيفة التى تحبها

- There are many good jobs.
- I'm looking forward to being(الوظيفة) one day.
- This job of (الوظيفة) is very important.
- I like it because (السبب)
- The person who does this job (طبيعة العمل)
- I like helping people to (ما ستفعله لمساعدة الناس)
- It's very interesting.

Writing tips

The body of the paragraph is where you explain and mention more examples. Elaborate on ideas, each idea is explained in one sentence.

هيكل الفقرة عبارة عن شرح وذكر الكثير من الأمثلة، وضح افكارك، كل فكرة فى جملة .

Example

A job you like

There are many interesting jobs. I think the doctor's job is the most important one. He or she helps us get better after being sick. I look forward to becoming a doctor one day to look after the sick and to try to find out the reason for that. He always looks after ill people and tries to find out why they are ill or what hurts them. If a doctor understands their illness, he gives them the right medicines to feel better. A good doctor usually makes sure that all people feel healthy. The nurse's job is as important as she helps doctors and patients. They are truly angels. We have to work hard to have the jobs of our dreams.

Check Point:

Write a paragraph about "Your dream job":

"My dream job"

My name's .... I look forward to being ....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 1

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What job do you want to do in the future?

3 am in Cairo

1. Read about some people in the photos. What are their jobs? *SB page 13*

A: I'm looking after patients (1) at a hospital. It's very busy. I'm looking after children in the children's ward (2). I like my job, but I'm feeling tired tonight. I'm looking forward to (3) going home and having a rest.

Amal



(1) المرضى
(2) جناح الأطفال
(3) يتطلع إلى
(4) يتأكد
(5) يركن
(6) كشك الطعام

B: We're driving around the city and making sure (4) that people are safe in the streets. We aren't very busy tonight. It's cold, so everyone is staying at home. Adel's feeling a bit bored and I'm feeling hungry. I'm looking forward to breaskfast!

Imad and Adel



C: I'm parking (5) my food stall (6) here because it's the best place in the city. Lots of people and tourists come this way. People start to buy their breakfast at 6 am. I'm getting everything ready. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking forward to drinking some hot coffee!

Kamal



Post-reading question:

- In your opinion, what's the most important job? Why?

Lesson 2

Listening Text

2. Listen to four people doing the jobs in Exercise 1. Write their jobs.

WB page 79

Narrator 1



Man 1 : I'm sorry, sir, but you can't leave your car here.

Narrator 2



Woman 1 : There seems to be a problem with the keyboard, but it won't take me long.

Narrator 3



Woman 2 : Good morning, this is Dina speaking, how can I help you?

Narrator 4



Man 2 : Are you looking for tins of beans? You can find them on the top shelf, over there.

Answers:

(1) A police officer

(2) A computer engineer

(3) A call-centre worker

(4) A shop worker

Lesson 2

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- What skills would you like to learn during the summer holiday?

4. Listen to three people talking about learning new skills and put the photos in the correct order. *SB page 15*

مهارة (1)
لغة الإشارة (2)
يتواصل (3)
أصم (4)
مفاجأة (5)
فن الخط (6)
فنان (7)
تقليدى (8)



Tamer : I'm Tamer. At the moment I'm learning a new skill[1]. I'm learning sign language[2] so I can communicate[3] better with my cousin, Sami. Sami is deaf[4] – he can't hear. He's learning sign language at school, too. I'm having sign language lessons on Saturday morning so I can give Sami a surprise[5]!



Eman : I'm Eman. At the weekend, I'm learning to do lots of new things. Our neighbour, Mr Osman, is in hospital at the moment. With some other neighbours in our building, we're repairing his flat. He lives in a lovely flat, but he can't look after it at the moment. My sisters and I are painting the kitchen and I am also sewing some new curtains.



Manal : I'm Manal. Mona and I are starting a calligraphy[6] and art club at school. We're very excited about it. My uncle is an artist[7] and he's coming to the school to teach us. We're studying traditional[8] Arabic calligraphy and we're enjoying it very much. I'm making a calligraphy book for my uncle as a present.

Post-listening question:

- Which of the previously mentioned skills would help you serve your community?

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What do you do at the weekend?

1. Read about what Ziad, Injy and Aya do at the weekend. Choose two sentences from a-d to complete each text. *SB page 14*





1. Hi, I'm Ziad. I live with my mum and dad in a small flat in Minya. At the weekend, I'm usually quite lazy. b d

2. Hello, I'm Injy and this is my sister Aya. We live near the sea. a c

(a) My father and my uncle have an old boat which they are repairing. I am learning to sail but Aya doesn't like the water very much!

(b) On Friday evening, my parents and I usually have a big dinner with my grandparents and we sometimes stay at their house. It's bigger than our flat.

(c) At the weekend, we do our homework and on Saturday we sometimes spend time with our father and uncle on their boat.

(d) On Saturday morning, I often stay in bed and then I have a late breakfast with grandmother - she's a fantastic cook! In the afternoon, I do my homework.

Post-reading question:

- What would you suggest Ziad and the two girls do to enjoy their time more?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Aya is a nurse. She helps her .... to get better.
   a) illnesses b) patients c) medicines d) diseases
2. Falafel is a/an .... meal in Egypt.
   a) international b) traditional c) modern d) new
3. She works in a hospital. She is working in the children's .... at the moment.
   a) word b) award c) ward d) world
4. He mustn't .... his car here.
   a) come b) park c) bark d) carry
5. He sells many things in the street. He has a small ....
   a) basket b) wall c) stall d) farm
6. He answers customers' calls in a big store. He is a .... worker.
   a) call-centre b) centre c) ship d) caller
7. The police officer drives around the city to .... sure that people are safe.
   a) take b) do c) make d) have
8. Children should be careful when they buy things from a street-food ....
   a) buyer b) seller c) worker d) waiter
9. He likes drawing. He wants to be a/an ....
   a) teacher b) doctor c) engineer d) artist
10. A .... person is a person who can't hear.
    a) blind b) weak c) deaf d) strong
11. She is learning .... She wants to improve her handwriting.
    a) technology b) biology c) geography d) calligraphy
12. He lives next door. He is my ....
    a) neighbour b) classmate c) servant d) patient
13. My mother asked me to buy her two .... of beans.
    a) pieces b) slices c) bottles d) tins
14. Deaf people communicate .... sign language.
    a) with b) in c) to d) from

Language

The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous to talk about things that are happening now:

- يعبر عن شىء يحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

- I am sitting in my English class **now**.
- She is writing a letter **at the moment**.

Form التكوين

Subject	be	
I	am	verb + ing
He / She / It	is	verb + ing
You / We / They	are	verb + ing

- I am **playing** chess.
- He is **having** lunch.
- They are **sleeping**.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

(at the moment فى هذه اللحظة - Look! انظر - Listen! أنصت - watch out احترس (فى الوقت الحاضر at present - الآن now

- My grandfather is repairing his laptop now.
- My uncle is watching TV at the moment.

لاحظ أن عند إضافة الـ (ing) للفعل:

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing):

- (take - taking) - (come - coming)

- بعض الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك واحد غالبًا ما نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة الـ (ing):

- (put - putting) - (cut - cutting) - (swim - swimming)

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ie) نحذف الـ (ie) ثم نضع (ying).

- (die - dying) - (lie - lying)

Negative النفى

Subject	be + not	
I	am not	verb + ing
He / She / It	is not (isn't)	verb + ing
You / We / They	are not (aren't)	verb + ing

- I am **playing** cards.
- I am not **playing** chess.
- He is **reading** a book.
- She is not (isn't) **watching** TV.
- They are **swimming**.
- We are not (aren't) **diving**.

1. Yes/No questions:

- بوضـع (Am - Is - Are) قبل الفاعـل.

Question
السؤال

Am / Is / Are	Sub. الفاعل	→	v + ing	...?

- Are you learning sign language? - Yes, I am. / No, I am not.
- Is Sara cooking lunch? - Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.

2. Wh-questions:

فى حالة السؤال بكلمة استفهام: يتم وضع كلمة الاستفهام قبل (is/are)

Q-Word كلمة الاستفهام	+	am / is / are	→	sub. الفاعل	+	v + ing	.... ?

- What is he doing? - He's doing his homework.
- What are you doing? - I'm helping my father.

لاحظ الفرق فى الاستخدام بين المضارع المستمر والمضارع البسيط

The present simple tense	The present continuous tense
It's used to express: **a) Habits** عادات - I always drink milk for breakfast. **b) Routines and repeated actions** الروتين والأفعال المتكررة - We go to school every day. **c) Things that are always true** حقائق - My aunt lives in Cairo.	**It's used to express:** **a) Things that are happening now:** أشياء تحدث وقت الكلام - I'm sitting in my English class. - Listen! Amir is shouting. **b) Unfinished actions in progress around now.** أفعال تحدث ولكن لم تنته إلى الأن - My sister is learning to dance. - Hany is studying medicine. **c) Temporary situations or actions** أفعال أو مواقف مؤقتة - They are painting the school this week.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... at the moment.
   a) 'm studying b) study
   c) studying d) studied
2. Be quiet! The baby ....
   a) is sleeping b) sleeps c) sleep d) sleeping
3. Don't forget to take your umbrella. It ....
   a) rain b) raining c) rains d) is raining
4. I'm sorry, I can't hear what you ....
   a) saying b) says c) are saying d) said
5. .... rice every day?
   a) Has he eaten b) Does he
   c) Is he eating d) Does he eat
6. Every Monday, Sally .... her kids to their football practice.
   a) drive b) drives c) driving d) is driving
7. .... at the moment?
   a) Does she work b) Is she working
   c) Will she work d) Did she work
8. Listen! Sandy .... in the bathroom.
   a) is singing b) singing c) sings d) sang
9. He .... to travel to the USA.
   a) want b) is wanting c) wants d) wanting

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She's <u>run</u> because she's late for her class. (....................)
2. Our teacher always <u>give</u> us lots of homework. (....................)
3. People <u>are speaking</u> English in Jamaica. (....................)
4. Every Sunday, we <u>visiting</u> my grandparents. (....................)
5. I <u>am working</u> today. I'm on holiday. (....................)

Lessons 1&2 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Asem : Hi, Nader. Can you tell me a little bit about your job?

Nader : Certainly! What would you like to know?

Asem : First of all, what (1)................................ your job?

Nader : I work as a computer (2)................................ .

Asem : What (3)................................ you do in your job?

Nader : I design programs to use at home.

Asem : What (4)................................ you doing at the moment?

Nader : I'm developing in-house programs.

Asem : (5)................................ you ever have meetings?

Nader : Yes, I usually have meetings once a month.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10

1. I always get up early to .... ready for school.
   a) get b) make c) do d) have
2. He helped his father to .... the hole in the roof of the house.
   a) have b) hurt c) take d) repair
3. Children like to go .... school trips.
   a) on b) at c) in d) by
4. My father .... me a surprise when he bought me a new bike.
   a) borrowed b) lent c) gave d) took
5. To get a good job, you should have many ....
   a) skulls b) skills c) scales d) presents
6. My sister likes to make her own clothes by herself. She likes ....
   a) swimming b) seeing c) sewing d) sawing
7. I .... with my friends by sending emails.
   a) telephone b) communicate c) write d) speak
8. Sara .... near the table at the moment.
   a) stands b) stand c) stand d) is standing

9 I must run home, mother .... for me.

a) is waiting b) wait c) waits d) waited

10 I always .... to my office early.

a) am going b) going c) goes d) go

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1 Two and two <u>is making</u> four. (....................)

2 It <u>rain</u> in autumn in some countries. (....................)

3 We <u>building</u> many bridges nowadays. (....................)

4 They usually <u>taking</u> the ten o'clock bus. (....................)

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

6

"Different people in your family"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

25

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
...... / 30			...... / 25			...... / 55		
(1-15)	(16-24)	(25-30)	(1-12)	(13-20)	(21-25)	(1-27)	(26-45)	(46-55)

Notes

....

....

....

....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 16-18 WB pages 81 & 82

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3

airport	مطار	guest	ضيف	suitcase	حقيبة سفر
crowds	الحشد/الجمهور	sharp	حاد	treat (ed)	يعامل/يعالج
funny	مضحك	skin	جلد	wedding	حفل زفاف

Prepositions of place حروف جر المكان

behind	خلف	in the foreground	في المقدمة/الطليعة	towards the right/left	نحو اليمين/اليسار
in front of	أمام	in the middle	في الوسط لـ	under	تحت
in the background	في الخلفية	on the left	على اليسار	on the right	على اليمين

Adjectives and adverbs الصفات والظروف (الحال)

Adjective	الصفة	Adverb	الظرف	Adjective	الصفة	Adverb	الظرف
bad	سيئ	badly	بطريقة سيئة	quick	سريع	quickly	بسرعة
careful	حريص	carefully	بحرص	quiet	هادئ	quietly	بهدوء
easy	سهل	easily	بسهولة	slow	بطيء	slowly	ببطء
excited	مبتهج	excitedly	بابتهاج	early	مبكر	early	مبكرًا
happy	سعيد	happily	بسعادة	fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة
hungry	جوعان	hungrily	بجوع	good	جيد	well	جيدًا
kind	عطوف	kindly	بعطف	hard	جاد	hard	بجدية
lazy	كسول	lazily	بكسل	late	متأخر	late	متأخرًا
loud	صوت عالٍ	loudly	بصوت عالٍ				

About clothes		عن الملابس			
Actions	**أفعال**	**Colours & patterns**	**الألوان والأنماط**	**Clothes**	**ملابس**
buy	يشترى	blue	أزرق	dress	فستان
choose	يختار	dark/light	غامق/فاتح	jeans	بنطلون جينز
hang	يعلق	green	أخضر	shirt	قميص
sell	يبيع	purple	بنفسجى	shorts	شورت
sew	يخيط	striped	مقلم/مخطط	T-shirt	تى شيرت
Lesson 4					
alone	بمفرده	grateful	ممتن/شاكر	teenager	مراهق
desert	صحراء	happiness	السعادة		
friendly	ودود	normal	عادى		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3					
Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	husband	زوج	suit	بدلة
hill	تل	playground	ملعب	though	بالرغم من
invite (d)	يدعو	port	ميناء	the Umm Sultan Shaban Mosque	مسجد أم السلطان شعبان
laugh (ed)	يضحك	shopping bag	حقيبة تسوق	wait (ed)	ينتظر
mountain	جبل	smile	يبتسم	weeding	إزالة الأعشاب الضارة
Lesson 4					
aged	بالغ من العمر	exciting	مثير	nature	الطبيعة
area	منطقة	land	أرض	probably	من المحتمل
continue (d)	يستمر	magazine	مجلة	river	نهر

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 3			
as usual	كالمعتاد	get ▶ married	يتزوج
catch ▶ a plane	يلحق بالطائرة	take ▶ a photo	يلتقط صورة
feel ▶ better	يشعر بتحسن	take ▶ a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية

Lesson 4

				▶ a rest	يحصل على راحة
			get	▶ texts	يتلقى رسائل نصية
	▶ something kind	يفعل شيئًا لطيفًا		▶ worried	يقلق
do	▶ well	يؤدي جيدًا	have	▶ a better time	يقضي وقتًا أفضل
	▶ wrong	يخطئ	make	▶ friends	يكوّن صداقات
			sleep	▶ enough	ينام بقدر كافٍ

Prepositions — حروف الجر

Lesson 3

for the first time	لأول مرة	on the rocks	على الصخور
get on a plane	يركب طائرة	smile (d) at	يبتسم أمام
go into	يدخل	walk for	يمشي لمدة

Lesson 4

go outside	يخرج	on a trip to	في رحلة إلى
happy about	سعيد بخصوص	pleased about	مسرور بخصوص

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 3

dry	جاف	wet	مبلل	win	يفوز	lose	يخسر

Conjugations of irregular verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Lesson 3

Present		Past simple	Past participle
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
fly	يطير	flew	flown
hang	يعلق	hung	hung
sew	يخيط	sewed	sewn
show	يعرض/يبين/يوضح	showed	shown

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 3

alone	بمفرده	not with other people
desert	الصحراء	an area of very dry land
grateful	ممتن / شاكر	feeling happy about the good things in your life
normal	طبيعي	usual not different
teenager	مراهق	a boy or girl aged 13 - 19

Language Notes

1 عند عطف فعلين على بعضهما فإنهما يأخذان نفس الزمن، ومن الأفضل عدم تكرار الفعل المساعد لنفس الزمن.

- I'm **sitting** under a tree and hungrily **eating** my lunch.

2 **make + adj. / inf.** يجعل

- The trip made the children **happy**.
- This medicine will make you **feel** better.

3 **It's + adj. + to + inf.** إنه لمن ....

- It's normal to **get** worried sometimes.

4 **need + n. / to + inf.** يحتاج

- People need **nature** to be happy.
- We need to **have** enough sleep.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father is in the garden. He is cleaning and .... the plants.
   a) waters b) water c) waters d) watering
2. It's good .... hard to get high marks.
   a) to study b) to studying c) study d) studying

Write it right

How to ask someone for help

كيفية طلب المساعدة من شخص ما

From : ahmed@yahoo.com

To : tamer@yahoo.com

Subject : Asking for help

Writing tips

Start your email with greetings such as:
Hello, Dear..., Hope you are well. ...
ابدأ رسالتك الإلكترونية بإلقاء التحية:
and end it with:
وقم بإنهائها مستخدمًا:
Regards,
Hope to see you soon,
Yours, ...

Dear Tamer,

Greetings! How are you and your family? I hope you all are in good health. I'm very happy to write this email to you. I am a normal teenager, but I often feel worried. I do my homework every day. I have lots of friends. I get texts from my friends. I do well at school. I enjoy my weekends with my family, but I think that my friends are having a better time than me. Please help me. I look forward to hearing from you. Write soon. Best wishes.

Yours,
Ahmed

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Salma. Tell her about your problems at school and ask her for help. Your name is Aya.

To : ....

From : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

Lesson 3 **Listening Text**

Pre-listening question: - What would you use to keep good memories alive?

2. Listen to the descriptions and put the photos in the correct order. *SB page 16*

Girl 1 : This is a photo of my sister's wedding [1]. It's at the end of the day and the guests [2] are slowly leaving. Most of the family are still there, though, and still enjoying the party. That's my sister smiling happily at the camera and the man next to her is Youssef, her new husband.



(1) حفل زفاف
(2) ضيوف
(3) صخور
(4) حاد
(5) مطار
(6) مضحك

Boy 1 : That's my class on our school trip to the mountains. We're sitting carefully on the rocks [3] because they are very sharp [4]! We got up at 5:00 o'clock in the morning and walked for hours and hours. You can't see me in this picture. I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily eating my lunch.



Boy 2 : This is me at the airport [5]. I'm waiting excitedly to get on a plane for the first time! My family were with me but you can't see them because my sister is taking the photo while my parents are quickly buying some sandwiches for us to eat on the plane.



Girl 2 : This is my aunt's new baby. Isn't she sweet? She is laughing loudly in this picture because she can see my aunt's cat. She always laughs when she sees this cat – she thinks it's very funny [6].



Post-listening question: - Why does the baby loudly laugh?

Lesson 3

Reading and listening

Pre-reading question:
- Where's Al Azhar Park?

5. Read and listen to complete the description of the photo with the expressions in the box. ***SB page 17***



This is a photo of me and my family in Al Azhar Park in Cairo. My mother and my sisters are sitting under a tree in the foreground of the photo. In the background, you can see the Umm Sultan Shaban Mosque. The tree is towards the right of the photo and my eldest sister Reem is sitting in front of it. Our mother is behind her – we can't see her face. My middle sister Talia is in the middle of the picture. She is taking a selfie as usual! Our aunt is behind them, down the hill and on the left. I think she is getting ready to take a photo, too.

Post-reading question:
- Do you think the family is having a good time? Why?

Lesson 4

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- What helps you feel happy?

SB page 18

Happiness for teenagers

It's normal[1] to get worried or to feel sad sometimes – but what helps teenagers[2] to feel happy? We found five things that can help.

1. Get lots of rest

Teenagers often don't sleep enough, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people[3] who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier!

2. Be friendly

It's good to be alone[4] sometimes, but people need people. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy.

3. Go outside

People need nature[5] to be happy. Go to desert or the river or, if you live in the city, go to a park.

4. Help someone

When you do something kind for someone else, this makes you feel happy, too. Try it! You feel really good.

5. Be grateful

One of the best ways to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and feel pleased[6] about them.

(1) طبيعى
(2) المراهقون
(3) الشباب
(4) وحيدًا/بمفرده
(5) الطبيعة
(6) مسرور



Post-reading question:
- After reading the advice, what are you going to do to feel happy?

Lesson 4

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- Who do you go to when you have troubles?

2. *Read the email to a magazine and its reply, and write the missing sentences a-c in the right places.* *WB page 82*

a) Your friends probably feel worried, just like you.

b) Please can you help me?

c) What am I doing wrong?



New Message

Dear Help! Magazine,

I am a normal teenager but I often feel worried about things. Every day, I stay at home and do my homework. Then, I get texts from my friends and they say they are all doing exciting things! [1] c

I do well at school and I enjoy my weekends with my family. We often go to the park or the beach, but I sometimes think that my friends are having a better time than me. [2] b

Yours, Osama

Send

New Message

Dear Osama,

Thank you for writing to us and yes, we will try to help you. It is normal to think that other people are doing more exciting things than you, but remember: you are wrong! [3] a

When you go to the park or the beach, do you send photos to your friends? They probably think YOU are having a better time than they are! Remember that we all work and relax at different times.

Be grateful for the good things in your life and continue to work hard!

Yours truly, Help! Magazine

Send

Post-reading question:

- What other advice do you have for Osama?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Children should be careful when they use the knife because it's very ....
   a) quick b) wet c) sharp d) hard
2. When people travel, they put their clothes in ....
   a) suits b) suitcases
   c) shopping bags d) sacks
3. My friend's sister is going to get married, so he invited me to her ....
   a) wedding b) birthday c) picnic d) journey
4. I went with my mother to the market. It was very busy. There were lots of ....
   a) sellers b) crowds c) messengers d) workers
5. Every teacher should .... students kindly.
   a) hurt b) wave c) treat d) hit
6. The zebra has .... skin.
   a) heavy b) colourful
   c) striped d) plain
7. I like watching films for Ahmed Helmy. He's really ....
   a) funny b) boring c) sad d) difficult
8. He wants to be a pilot to .... a plane.
   a) ride b) drive c) fly d) catch
9. You should be .... with your neighbours.
   a) friendly b) ugly c) rude d) lazy
10. To be .... is to be happy about the good things in your life.
    a) lonely b) worried c) grateful d) greedy
11. My mother always .... clothes in the sun to dry.
    a) shares b) hangs c) divides d) spills
12. Students who can't see well should sit in the .... of the class.
    a) foreground b) background
    c) underground d) playground
13. People prefer to wear .... clothes in the summer.
    a) heavy b) dark c) light d) black

Language

Adverbs of manner الظروف

We use the adverbs of manner to describe how we do the action of a verb.

يستخدم الظرف لوصف الفعل.

- Mr Adel **speaks** loudly.
- I can **climb** this tree easily.

- وتحول الصفة إلى ظرف غالباً بإضافة (ly) فى نهاية الصفة.

quick ⟶ quickly
loud ⟶ loudly

- عند انتهاء الصفة بحرف (y) ويسبقه حرف ساكن، تحول الـ (y) إلى (ily)

easy ⟶ easily
lazy ⟶ lazily

- هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هى):

fast ⟶ fast
hard ⟶ hard
late ⟶ late
early ⟶ early
good ⟶ well

- يأتى الظرف قبل الفعل أو بعده:

- I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily **eating** my lunch.
- She's **smiling** happily at the camera.

- لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة والظرف فى الأمثلة التالية:

- Mr. **Waleed** is kind. He treats the children kindly.

الصفة (kind) تصف الاسم (**Mr. Waleed**) بينما الظرف (kindly) يصف الفعل (**treats**)

Check Point

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I'm waiting excited to get on a plane for the first time. (..................)
2. We're sitting careful on the rocks because they are sharp. (..................)
3. My friend Aya is a beautifully girl. (..................)

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The story was very funny. The children laughed ....
   a) happily b) happy c) sad d) sadly
2. It was a terrible accident. She hurt her leg ....
   a) worst b) worse c) bad d) badly
3. I always study .... for my exams.
   a) bad b) hardly c) hard d) good
4. Sometimes I need my teacher to talk .... so I can understand her better.
   a) slowly b) slow c) slower d) slowest
5. He is a .... driver. He drives very carefully.
   a) carefully b) careful c) careless d) carelessly
6. If you play music ...., you'll hurt your ears.
   a) quiet b) quietly c) slowly d) loudly
7. Walk .... or you may miss the bus.
   a) quick b) fast c) slow d) slowly
8. We slept well in our .... bed.
   a) comfortable b) comfortably c) bad d) badly
9. It is at the end of the day and the guests are .... leaving!
   a) slow b) good c) slowly d) careless

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You drive quite <u>dangerous</u>. (..................)
2. This is a very important question, please think <u>careful</u> before you answer. (..................)
3. You are very <u>well</u> at English. (..................)
4. She usually arrives <u>lately</u>. (..................)
5. We lost the football match 4 – 2 yesterday. I don't think we played <u>badly</u>. (..................)

Speaking

Describing photos
وصف الصور



- This is a photo of my family.
- It shows when we were at the park.
- In the foreground, we can see my little sister, Noha, and my brother, Adel, in the striped T-shirt.
- In the background, my grandfather in the blue T-shirt.
- Next to my grandfather, my mother, Amira.
- My grandmother is on the left, she's the woman in the pink shirt. Next to her, my father, Dr. Samy.

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

Toka : Hello, Sara. What are you doing?

Sara : I'm looking at my photo album.

Toka : Can I see your photos?

Sara : Sure. This a (1).. of me and my friends.

Toka : It's beautiful.

Sara : It (2).. when we were on the school trip.

Toka : Tell me about your friends.

Sara : In the (3).. is my friend Mona. She was in front of us.

Toka : Who's the girl (4).. the left?

Sara : She's Dalia. She's in the (5).. T-shirt.

Lessons 3&4

General Excercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

1. How many hours should we sleep?
   a) 6. b) 8. c) 12. d) 4.
2. Who should you spend your time with?
   a) Family only. b) Friends only.
   c) Both a and b. d) neither a nor b.
3. How do you feel when you do something kind for someone?
   a) Bad. b) Worried.
   c) Sad. d) Good.
4. Who don't often have enough sleep?
   a) Teenagers. b) Fathers.
   c) Mothers. d) Teachers.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. It's good to .... new friends.
   a) make b) do c) stay d) spend
2. The .... temperature for people is 37°C.
   a) traditional b) modern c) natural d) normal
3. You should be careful when you sit on rocks because they are ....
   a) easy b) dry c) sharp d) soft
4. It's kind to smile .... the person you meet.
   a) in b) to c) at d) of
5. My sister is sitting under the tree. She is .... a selfie.
   a) doing b) taking c) making d) getting
6. Students should learn to do their school work ....
   a) nervously b) late c) alone d) lonely
7. They had a big party. They had many ....
   a) customers b) guests c) workers d) hosts

8. I lived in Cairo for more than ten years. I know it ....
   a) good b) more better c) the best d) well
9. I feel really .... because my sister is ill.
   a) sad b) sadly c) happily d) tiring
10. The guests found their hotel .... after they bought a map of the city.
   a) easily b) ease c) easy d) easier

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. Do you think you speak English <u>good</u>? (..........................)
2. Basmala is a <u>love</u> student. She is kind and pleasant. (..........................)
3. My teacher says that Samy works <u>hardly</u> in our class. (..........................)
4. When they heard the bad news, they were very <u>sadly</u>. (..........................)

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your new friend Reda to tell him about your problems at school. Your name is Essam.

6

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

24

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
.... / 30			.... / 24			.... / 54		
(1-15)	(16-25)	(26-30)	(1-11)	(12-19)	(20-24)	(1-26)	(27-45)	(46-54)

Notes

....
....
....
....

Lessons 5&6

SB pages 19 & 20 WB pages 83 & 84

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 5

congratulations تهانينا	greetings تحيات	well done أحسنت
get better يتحسن	shame خزى / عار	worry (y-ied) يقلق

Lesson 6

guess (ed) يخمن	pass (ed) ينجح فى	prepare (d) يعد/يجهز

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 5

coach مدرب	hope (d) يأمل	news الأخبار
football practice تدريب كرة القدم	imagine (d) يتخيل	pass an exam يجتاز امتحان
granddad جد	miss (ed) يفتقد	team فريق

Lesson 6

amazing مذهل	difficult/hard صعب
Amman عمان (مدينة)	hear (heard - heard) يسمع

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 5

Great to see you! إنه لمن الرائع رؤيتك!	How is it going at school? كيف تسير الأمور فى المدرسة؟
How are things? كيف الأحوال؟	the next term الفصل الدراسى التالى

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 5

respond to يرد على	with time بمرور الوقت

Lesson 6

congratulations on مبروك على	speak to يتحدث إلى

Language Notes

pass = succeed in ينجح فى

- I passed my English exam. = I succeeded in my English exam.

Write it right

Useful phrases to use in email

عبارات هامة للاستخدام عند كتابة رسالة بريد إلكترونى

1. Phrases to begin with جمل المقدمة	Dear Injy,/ Hi Injy,/ Hello Injy,
2. Asking how someone is السؤال عن حال الشخص	How are you? How are things? How is it going? How is life?
3. Introducing the news تقديم الأخبار	The news from me/us is that .... Guess what?
4. Talking about feelings الحديث عن المشاعر	I/We miss you I/We hope that you are .... I'm so excited/ sad because ....
5. Talking about the future الحديث عن المستقبل	I'm looking forward to .... I can't wait to ....
6. Phrases to end عبارات إنهاء الرسالة	Write soon See you soon

Example

To : ola@student.com
From : nada@yahoo.com
Subject : My school

Hello Ola,

How are you? I hope you are well. I'm fine. ***The news from me is that*** I did badly in my English exam.

I'm very sad because my parents are angry with me. My teacher, Miss Asmaa, told me to revise well the next time. She's very kind. We love her so much. She always gives us good advice. ***I can't wait to*** have the next exam. I want to make my parents happy and proud of me.

Write soon.

Nada

Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - How's it going at your school?

1. Listen to four short conversations and put the photos in the correct order.

SB page 19

يتحسن (1)
خزى/ عار (2)
يخمن (3)
أحسنت (4)
أخبار (5)
يجتاز (6)
تهانينا (7)

Narrator 1

Ali : Hi, Yasser! Are you coming to football practice on Thursday?

Yasser : Oh, hello Ali. No, I can't come this week. My granddad is in hospital again. I have to look after my little brothers while my mum goes to visit him

Ali : I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he gets better (1) soon. It's a shame (2) that you can't come. Maybe see you next Thursday, then.

Yasser : Thanks, Ali.

Narrator 2



Yasser : Hey Ali, Guess (3) what! I'm in the football team! The coach told me after football practice last night.

Ali : Well done (4), Yasser! That's great news (5).

Narrator 3

Hana : Hello, Salma. How are you? Great to see you! How's it going at your new school? Are you enjoying it?



Salma : Hello, Hana. Great to see you too! The new school is really hard! I don't know anyone, and I feel everyone is much cleverer than me. I have to do hours of homework every night.

Hana : That must be difficult. But don't worry: I'm sure things will get better with time. You were always the best student in our class!

Narrator 4

Hana : Hi, Huda. How are things?

Huda : Hello, Hana! Fine thanks. I passed (6) my English exam!

Hana : Congratulations (7)! I'm so happy for you. Everyone knows that's a really.

Post-listening question: - How does Salma feel at her new school?

Lesson 5 Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What kind of news would you tell your friend?



Hi Salma,

How are you? I hope you are enjoying your new school. We really miss[1] you.

I am fine, but there is some bad news from school. Mrs Al-Gamal is leaving! She is such a good science teacher and we are feeling very sad.

I have some good news[2], too. Guess what?

My parents say I can go on the school trip[3] to Amman. I am very excited! There are many amazing places to visit there. The trip is in March and I can't wait.

So what's your news? Write soon!

Injy

(1) يفتقد

(2) أخبار

(3) رحلة مدرسية

Post-reading question:

- Where do you think Injy is from?

Lesson 6

Reading and listening

Pre-reading question: - Is sending an email easier than sending a letter? Why?

2. Read the email from Tamer to Tarek. Correct the mistakes. Listen and check your answers.

WB page 84

Hi Tarek,

How's it going? Congratulations[1] on passing[2] your maths test! Do you have more exams next term?



(1) تهانينا

(2) يجتاز

(3) يشارك

(4) الإبحار

The news from me is that we are moving to a new house! I'm so excited because my bedroom in the new house is very big. I have some bad news, too. I'm sharing[3] the room with my brother! But this is only for a week until his room is ready.

I'm looking forward to meeting you in the summer. Do you want to go swimming or sailing[4] at the beach this year? I can't wait to see you.

Write soon!

Tamer

Post-reading question: - What was Tamer's bad news to Tarek?

Life Skills

When you have **empathy**, you can imagine how other people feel. It is important to show empathy when your friends are sad or happy.



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's a .... that you don't help your parents.
   a) shame b) happiness c) joy d) fun
2. I .... you will get full marks in your next exams.
   a) want b) hope c) show d) pass
3. I'm so happy to see you after these long years. I really .... you.
   a) lose b) win c) earn d) miss
4. I'm so happy. I have .... my exams.
   a) succeeded b) passed c) won d) earned
5. .... what I have bought for you.
   a) Talk b) Make c) Give d) Guess
6. I often help my mum .... our food.
   a) prepare b) repair c) sell d) do
7. Don't worry. Everything will be OK .... time.
   a) by b) at c) with d) of
8. Teachers should speak kindly .... their students.
   a) at b) for c) to d) by
9. Everyone congratulated me .... passing my maths test.
   a) on b) at c) with d) by
10. My last trip was .... I'll go there again.
    a) boring b) amazing c) terrible d) bad
11. We always go to our football .... to keep fit.
    a) practise b) practice c) fan d) experience
12. After the match, the .... told me that I would be in the football team.
    a) worker b) coach c) surgeon d) volunteer

Speaking

Responding to news الرد على الأخبار

Good news الأخبار الجيدة	Bad news الأخبار غير الجيدة
- Well done! أحسنت	- I'm sorry to hear that. حزين لسماع ذلك
- That's great news! إنها أخبار عظيمة	- I hope he gets better soon. أتمنى أن يتحسن قريبًا (تقال فى المرض)
- Congratulations! مبروك/تهانينا	- It's a shame that you .... من المخزى أنك ..... (تقال عند توبيخ/لوم شخص)
- I'm so happy for you. أنا سعيد جدًا من أجلك	-That must be difficult. من المؤكد أن هذا صعب.
	- Don't worry. I'm sure things will get better with time. لا تقلق، أنا متأكد أن الأمور سوف تتحسن بمرور الوقت.

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue: WB

Dalida : My mother didn't go to work today because she is ill.

Heba : I'm (1).. to hear that.

Dalida : She had an interview at the bank for a new job, but she couldn't go.

Heba : It's a (2).. that she didn't go.

Dalida : She did the interview online from her bed.

Heba : That (3).. be difficult!

Dalida : Yes, but she got the job!

Heba : That's (4).. news! I'm so happy for her.

Dalida : She is still not feeling very well.

Heba : Don't (5).. . I'm sure she'll be better soon.

Lessons 5 & 6 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue: (5)

Randa : You look happy, Leila. What's the matter?
Leila : I've passed my driving test.
Randa : (1) .... ! Do you have a car?
Leila : Yes, my uncle has just bought a new car. He's going to give, me his old one.
Randa : That's great (2) .... !
Leila : So, would you (3) .... to go for a drive on Saturday?
Randa : Yes, I'd love to. (4) .... will you go?
Leila : Well, we could have a picnic and go to the Pyramids.
Randa : (5) .... time will you come?
Leila : I'll come for you at about 11 o'clock.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (10)

1. It's a .... that you can't come. It's your best friend's wedding.
   a) good b) awesome c) shame d) empathy
2. The .... prepares food for people to eat.
   a) street-food seller b) shop worker
   c) street-food buyer d) doctor
3. Your father can .... the car on this road. It's very quiet.
   a) put b) park c) store d) save
4. This is a photo of my parents' ....
   a) birth b) marry c) married d) wedding
5. ....! You passed a really difficult exam.
   a) Sorry b) Bad news c) Congratulations d) Shame
6. Please .... sure that you write your emails carefully.
   a) make b) take c) do d) have
7. This nurse works in the children's ....
   a) hard b) ward c) award d) reward

8. The teacher looks angry. He is hitting the table ....
   a) quietly b) quiet c) angry d) angrily
9. He is a bad driver. He drives ....
   a) dangerously b) dangerous c) slow d) slowly
10. It .... quite heavily. Perhaps we shouldn't go out tonight.
   a) rains b) is raining c) raining d) rain

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. You won't find Mona at home right now. She studies in the library. (........................)
2. My sister usually is going to school by bus. (........................)
3. She entered the room quiet so that she would not wake the baby up. (........................)
4. If you walk so slow, you will miss the bus. (........................)

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

6

"Telling your friend good news"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

25

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks			Notes
.... / 20			.... / 25			.... / 45			....
(1-9)	(10-15)	(16-20)	(1-12)	(13-19)	(20-25)	(1-22)	(23-39)	(40-45)	....

Video Script

Cities are very busy places. Lots of people live and work in them and there is always lots of traffic [1] and noise. This makes some people feel worried and unhappy. When people feel like this, it is a good idea to go outside and experience [2] nature [3].

In Cairo, many people like going to the Al Azhar Park. Here, they walk slowly around the gardens and look at the many fountains, palm trees, plants and flowers. This makes them calm in the middle of a very big city.

These people are meeting friends and family, and having picnics outside.

In other parts of Egypt, people can experience nature in many different ways. This is Ahmed and he lives in Sharm El-Sheikh. He is a tourist guide [4] and always works hard. Here he is speaking on the phone.

Ahmed always feels happy when he visits the Ras Mohammed nature reserve. This is a National Park in the Sinai Peninsula [5].

Today, he is visiting the park to go scuba diving in the Red Sea. He feels relaxed [6] when he sees all the things that live under the water, such as the fish and the coral.

When you want to be outside, there are many beautiful places on the Nile.

This is Lamia and she lives in Aswan. Today, she is sailing [7] happily on the river with her father on a felucca [8]. She likes doing this because she likes the different birds that she can see, like herons [9], geese [10] and vultures [11].

Some people, however, like visiting the deserts of Egypt when they want to be outside. People like walking in the deserts to see the sand dunes [12] because it is very quiet.

And these people are flying slowly above the desert in a hot air balloon [13].

We feel good when we go outside. Where do you like to go?

(1) حركة المرور
(2) يجرب
(3) الطبيعة
(4) مرشد سياحى
(5) شبه جزيرة سيناء
(6) مسترخٍ
(7) يبحر
(8) فلوكة/مركب شراعى
(9) طائر البلشون
(10) الإوز
(11) النسور
(12) الكثبان الرملية
(13) منطاد الهواء الساخن

Unit 2 Review

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

airport	مطار	greetings	تحيات	repair (ed)	يصلح
alone	بمفرده	guess (ed)	يخمن	sail (ed)	يبحر
calligraphy	فن الخط	guest	ضيف	sewing	الخياطة/الحياكة
catch a plane	يلحق بالطائرة	happiness	السعادة	shame	خزى
ward	جناح/قسم	have a rest	يأخذ راحة	sharp	حاد
congratulations	تهانينا	lazy	كسول	sign language	لغة الإشارة
crowds	الحشد/الجمهور	look forward to	يتطلع إلى	skill	مهارة
deaf	أصم	make friends	يكوِّن صداقات	skin	جلد
desert	صحراء	make sure	يتأكد	smile (d) at	يبتسم أمام
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	neighbour	جار	speak to	يتحدث إلى
food stall	كشك الطعام	normal	عادى	suitcase	حقيبة سفر
friendly	ودود	park (ed)	يركن السيارة	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية
funny	مضحك	pass (ed)	ينجح فى	teenager	المراهق
get better	يتحسن	patients	المرضى	treat (ed)	يعامل/يعالج
get married	يتزوج	pleased about	مسرور بخصوص	wave (d) (to)	يلوح بيده (لـ)
grateful	ممتن/شاكر	prepare (d)	يعد/يجهز	wedding	حفل زفاف

Jobs الوظائف

call-centre worker	عامل مركز الاتصال	nurse	ممرضة	shop worker	عامل المحل
computer engineer	مهندس كمبيوتر	police officer	ضابط شرطة	street-food seller	بائع طعام بالشارع

Language

1 The present continuous tense

It's used to express:

A. Things that are happening now:

- I'm sitting in my English class.
- Listen! Amir is shouting.

B. Unfinished actions in progress around now:

- My sister is learning to dance.
- Hany is studying medicine.

C. Temporary situations or actions.

- They are painting the school this week.

2 Adverbs of manner الظروف

We use the adverbs of manner to describe how we do the action of a verb.

- Mr Adel speaks loudly.
- I can climb this tree easily.

Speaking

Responding to news

Good news:

- Well done!
- That's great news!
- Congratulations.
- I'm so happy for you.

Bad news:

- I 'm sorry to hear that.
- It's a shame that you ....
- That must be difficult.
- Don't worry.

Al-Azhar Corner

Based on Unit 2 أسئلة خاصة بأبنائنا طلبة الأزهر الشريف

1) Finish the following two-mini dialogues:

A) **Basel** : I lost my new mobile phone.

Nadia : ....

B) **Maya** : Congratulations on passing your maths exam.

Sarah : ....

2) Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. A nurse	**a)** makes sure that people are safe.
2. A police officer	**b)** do at the weekend?
3. Why is Hoda waving	**c)** to hear that.
4. What do you usually	**d)** looks after patients.
5. I'm sorry	**e)** doing at the weekends?
	f) to those girls?

Answers: **1.** ( ) **2.** ( ) **3.** ( ) **4.** ( ) **5.** ( )

3) Write an email to your friend Taha. Tell him that your little brother is in hospital. Your name is Amr.

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 2

Cumulative Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Where is this text from?
   a) A blog. b) A website. c) An email. d) A story.
2. What's Dina's nationality?
   a) Chinese. b) French. c) English. d) Egyptian.
3. How is Dina feeling?
   a) Sad. b) Happy. c) Worried. d) Nervous.
4. Where is Dina's mother from?
   a) Greece. b) Egypt. c) England. d) France.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Ali : Hi, how are you?
Jack : Hi. I'm (1).., thanks.
Ali : Excuse me, (2).. is your name?
Jack : I'm Jack. What's yours?
Ali : I'm Ali. (3).. are you from, Jack?
Jack : I'm from America. I'm new here.
Ali : What are you (4).. in the university?
Jack : I'm studying Biology. What about you?
Ali : Biology is a very interesting field of study, but I'm studying business.
Jack : I (5).. to see you again soon.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

6

Omar decided that he wanted to be a doctor when he grows up. He made his decision after seeing a television programme about a doctor who worked in China. So, Omar worked hard at school, passed all his exams and went to university to study to be a doctor. He spent most of his time working, and had time to make many good friends.

When he finished, he found a job as a doctor working in a village in northern India. He worked with a group of older doctors and a young doctor. Most of the time, they worked in the small village hospital, but on two days a week

they went to a nearby town and helped the Indian doctors who worked there. One day, when Omar was working in the larger hospital, a young man came in with a broken leg. He wasn't Indian. When the man saw Omar, he said, "Omar! Do you remember me? We were in the same secondary school!"

A) Answer the following questions:

1. When did Omar decide he wanted to be a doctor?

....

2. Where did the doctor on the television programme work?

....

3. What was wrong with the young man who came into the hospital?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. In which part of India was the village where Omar worked?
   a) The capital. b) The north. c) The south. d) The east.
5. Who did Omar work with at first in India?
   a) Other doctors. b) Some older and younger doctors.
   c) Older doctors. d) A group of friends.
6. How did the young man in hospital know Omar?
   a) They were together in the same school.
   b) Their parents were friends.
   c) They played for the same football team.
   d) They met at the airport.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. My little brother is very .... He always wants to stay at home and watch TV. WB
   a) boring b) dangerous c) lazy d) active
2. We need a computer engineer to .... our computer because it doesn't work. WB
   a) repair b) sail c) spend d) stay
3. The .... is an area of very dry land. WB
   a) river b) desert c) sea d) waterfall
4. A/An .... is a boy or girl aged 13 - 19. WB
   a) old man b) child c) baby d) teenager

5. .... means usual, not different. WB

a) Natural b) Modern c) Normal d) Same

6. To be .... means not to be with other people. WB

a) alone b) lonely c) pleased d) worried

7. I study .... to make my handwriting better.

a) maths b) geography c) calligraphy d) biography

8. How often do you .... dinner? WB

a) make b) making c) made d) makes

9. Nadia feels ill, so she .... in bed this morning. WB

a) is staying b) stays c) stayed d) staying

10. On Saturday, I usually .... time with my cousins. WB

a) spends b) spend

c) am spending d) spending

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. We watch a film and it is very funny. (........................) WB
2. She's run because she's late for her lesson. (........................)
3. The teacher treats all her children kind. (........................) SB
4. My friend sews bad. (........................) SB

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

6

"How to be happy in your life"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

35

Unit 2 Research Projects

1. An important job

Do a research on "An important job".

Use these guiding points to help you:

- Importance of doing your best and studying hard to get a good job.
- Describe the job in details.
- Why this job is important./ What you need to do to get that job.



2. Problems that teenagers face

Do a research on "Problems that teenagers face".

Use these guiding points to help you:

- Different problems that teenagers face at school or at home.
- Advise them about sleep, food, family, exercise, free time, etc.
- Who to meet to solve these problems.



Research steps

1. A suitable title
2. An introduction
3. Main ideas and information
4. The results
5. Resources

Look and describe the jobs:

1



2



3



4



5



1 ....

2 ....

3 ....

4 ....

5 ....



Unit 3 Great jobs

Objectives of the unit

Reading : An article about the Egyptian handball team; a text about ancient Egyptian doctors; a text about heroes

Writing : A paragraph about your partner's past; a text about your hero

Listening : Descriptions of different heroes; a talk about a family history; a discussion about what makes a hero

Speaking : Talking about heroes; discussing your family history; saying what you are proud of; checking your understanding

Language : *used to*

Life Skills : Collaboration; communication

Tapescript

تشير لأسئلة المتميزين SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 22-25 WB pages 86 & 87

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1

attack (ed)	يهاجم	heart	القلب	staff	طاقم العمل
Baheya Foundation	مؤسسة بهية (لعلاج السرطان)	hero	بطل	successful	ناجح
cancer	سرطان	improve (d)	يُحسِّن	teamwork	عمل جماعى
date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	medicine	دواء	treatment	علاج
disease	مرض	modern technology	التكنولوجيا الحديثة	volunteer	متطوع
expert	خبير	shark	سمكة قرش		

Jobs — الوظائف

charity worker	عامل فى جمعية خيرية	scientist	عالم	surgeon	جراح
nuclear scientist	عالم نووى	sports coach	مدرب رياضى		

Lesson 2

against	ضد	goal	هدف/مرمى	score (d)	يسجل/يحرز
competition	منافسة/مسابقة	handball	كرة اليد	senior	أكبر سنًا/خبرة
event	حدث	junior	مبتدئ/ناشئ	team	فريق
final	المباراة النهائية	player	لاعب	win	يفوز/يكسب

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1

Cairo University	جامعة القاهرة	preparatory	إعدادى	similar	مشابه
die (d)	يموت	primary	ابتدائى		

Lesson 2

chess	شطرنج	Egyptian	مصرى	Tunisia	دولة تونس

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 1

do ▶ experiments يُجرى تجارب معملية	improve ▶ a sport يحسن رياضة
give ▶ examples يعطى أمثلة	lose ▶ a leg يفقد ساقًا
have ▶ a lesson لدية حصة	make ▶ a hero يصنع بطلًا

Lesson 2

get ▶ a prize يحصل على جائزة	the Africa Cup of Nations كأس الأمم الإفريقية
start ▶ a charity يبدأ فى إنشاء جمعية خيرية	the under-19 World Cup Final نهائى كأس العالم تحت ١٩ سنة

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 1

die from يموت بسبب	help with يساعد فى	with heart problems ذو مشاكل فى القلب
find out (about) يكتشف (عن)	was born into وُلِدَ فى	

Lesson 2

by (V + ing) بواسطة	play for يلعب لدى
good at جيد فى	throw into يرمى فى داخل

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 1 female أنثى	male ذكر	inside داخل	outside خارج
Lesson 2 win يفوز/يكسب	lose يخسر/يفقد	the best الأفضل	the worst الأسوأ

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Lesson 2

Present	Past simple	Past participle
lose يخسر	lost	lost
mean يعنى/يقصد	meant	meant
throw يرمى	threw	thrown
win يفوز	won	won

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 3

competition	مسابقة/منافسة	an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something
handball	كرة اليد	a sport with seven players in a team. They score by throwing the ball into a goal
junior	مبتدئ/ناشئ	for younger people
senior	أكبر سنًا/خبرة	for older people
won	فاز	were first in a game or competition

Language Notes

1 was/were + born وُلِدَ

- Magdy Yacoub was born in 1935.
- My children were born outside Egypt.

---

2 work as + وظيفة يعمل كـ

- My father works as a teacher.
- He stopped his work as a surgeon.

---

3 The first ...... to + inf. أول .... من ....

- They were the first team from Africa to win in 2018.

---

4 special مميز/خاص (لفئة معينة)
private خاص (ذو ملكية خاصة لفرد)

- STEM schools are special schools that focus on science, maths and technology.
- My cousins go to a private school. Their father pays a lot of money there.

---

5 staff العاملون/الموظفون (تعامل معاملة الجمع إذا قصدناها كأفراد كلاً على حده)

- Some of the staff are volunteers.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My little brothers .... born in Luxor.
   a) was b) were c) is d) are
2. I was the first student .... at school yesterday.
   a) arrive b) arriving c) to arriving d) to arrive

Write it right

How to write about what makes a hero

كيفية الكتابة عن مواصفات البطل

- A hero is someone who can (فعل).
- He's the person who can help people in many ways.
- A hero can be someone who gives up their life so that others could live.
- A hero can be (وظيفة).
- He can (طبيعة عمله).
- He's the person who makes a difference in a person's life.

Writing tips

Write down relevant ideas and vocabulary to the topic.

- اكتب موضوعك متضمنًا أفكار ومفردات مرتبطة به.

Example

What makes a hero

A hero is someone who can show courage when they face a problem. A hero is a person who is able to help the others in many ways. A person can become a hero by saving someone who is in danger. Another example of a hero is someone who is there to help others to go on through difficulties of life. A hero can be someone who gives up their life so that others could live. A hero does not always have to show courage, he can be afraid, but still be a hero through his other actions. A hero can be a teacher. He can teach you to read or write and that will make a big difference in your life. That is a hero to me, someone who makes a difference in a person's life.

Check Point:

Write a paragraph about "Your hero":

"My hero"

My kind of hero is someone who ....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Mention a great character that faced problems and succeeded in their lives.

2. Listen to someone talking about the people in the photos. Check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 23

Narrator 1

Speaker 1: Photo one shows Omar Abdelkader. He was born in 1994. When Omar was 22, a shark[1] attacked[2] him and he lost a leg, but this did not stop him wanting to be successful[3]. Now he helps other people with similar problems and he is an important sports coach.



سمكة قرش (1)
يهاجم (2)
ناجح (3)
عالم نووي (4)
علاج (5)
جراح قلب (6)

Narrator 2

Speaker 2: Photo two shows Sameera Moussa. Sameera was born in 1917 and studied science at Cairo University. She was Egypt's first female nuclear scientist[4] and wanted to use nuclear treatments[5] in medicine. She died in 1952.



Narrator 3

Speaker 1: Photo three shows Magdy Yacoub. He was born in Cairo in 1935. He went to Cairo University and became an important heart surgeon[6]. He then helped people with heart problems for many years. He stopped most of his work a long time ago, but in 2006, he started a charity to help children with heart problems.





Narrator 4

Speaker 2: Photo four shows workers at the Baheya Foundation[7] in Cairo. The charity takes its name from Mrs Baheya Wahby who sadly died from cancer[8]. When she was ill, her family saw that people with cancer needed more help. Now, Mrs Baheya Wahby's house is a special hospital to help women from poor families with the disease[9]. Expert[10] doctors and nurses use modern technology[11] to help them. Some of the staff[12] are volunteers[13]. The Baheya Foundation opened in 2015. From 2015 to 2020, the Foundation helped 120,000 women.

مؤسسة بهية (7)
السرطان (8)
مرض (9)
خبير (10)
التكنولوجيا الحديثة (11)
طاقم العمل (12)
متطوعون (13)

Post-listening question:

- When did Dr. Magdy Yacoub start a charity?

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What sport do you like?

1. Look at the photo. Do you know which team this is? Which sport do you think they play? ***SB page 24***

Egyptian heroes!



The Egyptian handball[1] team are heroes[2]! They won[3] the handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia in 2020. They won the final[4] against Tunisia 27-23. That means they are the best team in Africa!

This is not the first time Egypt's handball team played in a final. In 2019, the junior team[5] won the under-19 World Cup[6] Final 32-28 against Germany. They were the first team from Africa to win it. In 2018, the senior team[7] were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations, but lost the final against Tunisia.

Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's hope the Egyptian team can win competitions[8] again!

(1) كرة اليد
(2) أبطال
(3) فاز
(4) المباراة النهائية
(5) فريق الشباب
(6) كأس العالم
(7) الفريق الأول
(8) منافسات

Post-reading question: - Who won the Africa Cup of Nations in 2018?

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What are the most popular sports in Egypt?

1. Complete the text with these words. ***WB page 87***

My brother Ahmed loves playing handball and he's very good at it. When he was eight, he played in a junior competition for a team in our city. The team didn't win, but it was in the final. Ahmed is now 21 and last year, he played for an important senior team. He was very pleased. Next year, the team are playing in an important competition.
I hope they win it!



Post-reading question: - When did Ahmed start playing handball?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother is only 10 years. He wants to join the .... team.
   a) small b) old c) junior d) senior
2. My grandfather is my .... He helped many people in his village and built a school.
   a) thief b) hero c) player d) driver
3. Dr. Magdy Yacoub is a world famous heart ....
   a) worker b) scientist c) waiter d) surgeon
4. Dr. Magdy Yacoub helped people .... heart problems get better.
   a) with b) by c) in d) on
5. A player should practise more to .... his skills in a sport.
   a) lose b) improve c) climb d) make
6. Scientists do many experiments to find .... for many illnesses.
   a) treatments b) developments c) moments d) monuments
7. When I was little, a thief .... me and a police officer saved me and arrested him.
   a) attacked b) attracted c) won d) earned
8. A .... helps people or animals that need help.
   a) sports coach b) charity worker c) scientist d) police officer
9. Our team won the match .... Tunisia.
   a) away b) across c) again d) against
10. The Egyptian handball team won an important .... in 2020.
    a) development b) experiment c) competition d) completion
11. My father died from .... It's a dangerous disease.
    a) cancer b) flu c) kidney d) heart
12. In handball, players score by .... the ball into a goal.
    a) touching b) throwing c) heading d) saving
13. Mohamed Salah plays .... Liverpool team in England.
    a) in b) on c) to d) for
14. Working in a group is called ....
    a) homework b) manual work c) teamwork d) housework

Language

The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage
الاستخدام

- We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past and for past habits.

- نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط لنتحدث عن فعل حدث فى الماضى وانتهى أو للتعبير عن عادات فى الماضى.

- I visited my uncle yesterday.

1 Verb " to be"

I		**frightened.**
He	**was**	**hungry.**
She	**wasn't**	**a nurse.**
It		**big.**

We		**early.**
You	**were** / **weren't**	**at school.**
They		**quiet.**

Yes/ No Questions **السؤال بمعنى هل**

Affirmative	**They were excited.**	**I was busy.**
Question	**Were they excited?**	**Were you busy?**

2 Regular & Irregular verbs

Form
التكوين

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل

- My father bought a new car last year.
- I was very tired this morning.

لاحظ: تنقسم الأفعال إلى قسمين:

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة تتكون بإضافة (d / ed / ied) للمصدر			**Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة** يتغير فيها شكل الفعل وليس لها قاعدة محددة		
live	►	lived	win	►	won
visit	►	visited	lose	►	lost
study	►	studied	get	►	got

لاحظ: متى نضيف (ied / ed / d) للفعل المنتظم؟ ومتى نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ed)؟

1. d

يضاف حرف (d) للفعل المنتهى بحرف الـ (e)

(arrive - arrived)
(live - lived)

2. ied

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن نحذفها ونضع (ied)

(study - studied)
(carry - carried)

3. ed

إذا لم ينته الفعل بالنهايات السابقة نضيف (ed)

(watch - watched)
(play - played)

4. double letter + ed

لاحظ أننا نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ed) إذا كان الفعل ينتهى بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك (واحد فقط)

(prefer - preferred)
(stop - stopped)

Key words الكلمات الدالة

(yesterday أمس - last .... الماضى - .... ago منذ - in the past فى الماضى - in + سنة فى الماضى (in 2010)

- My father **was born** in 1980.
- We **visited** Luxor 2 years ago.

Negative النفى

- نضع (didn't) بين الفاعل والمصدر.

Subject ▶ did not (didn't) + **inf.**

- I did not **arrive** late for school yesterday.
- You didn't **buy** a new notebook last week.

لاحظ: استخدام (when) بمعنى «عندما» مع زمن الماضى البسيط:

- When I was 12, I won a medal.
- My parents lived in Tanta when they were young.

3 The past simple tense questions

1. Yes/No questions:

Did + subject + **inf.?**

Question
السؤال

- Did you **watch** TV last night?
- Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

2. Wh-questions:

● عند السؤال بكلمة استفهام توضع كلمة الاستفهام قبل (did) ثم الفاعل ثم المصدر.

Q. Word (كلمة استفهام) + did + subject + **inf.?**

- What time did you **go** to bed?
- I went to bed at 10 o'clock.

4 Pronunciation of (ed)

The pronunciation of words ending in (ed) depends on the final consonant (sound). There are three ways to pronounce (ed).

نطق الكلمات المنتهية بـ (ed) يعتمد على الصوت الأخير للكلمة. وهناك ثلاثة طرق لنطق الحرفين (ed).

/id/		/t/		/d/	
t	wanted	**p**	helped	**l**	called
d	needed	**k**	looked	**n**	cleaned
		sh	washed	**r**	offered
		ch	watched	**g**	damaged
		gh	laughed	**v**	loved
		th	breathed	**s**	used
		ss	kissed	**w**	followed
		c	danced	**y**	enjoyed
		x	fixed	**z**	amazed

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother was born in Cairo .... 1985.
   a) in b) at c) for d) ago
2. In 2016, a shark .... Omar and he lost a leg. WB
   a) is attacking b) attacking c) attacked d) attacks
3. My elder brother left the university three years ....
   a) ago b) when c) as d) for
4. .... we got home, we listened to some music.
   a) What b) Where c) When d) Who
5. My cousin had an accident .... night.
   a) ago b) in c) on d) last
6. What .... you do yesterday?
   a) do b) does c) did d) were
7. I went to the beach a ....
   a) tomorrow b) next week c) last week d) week ago
8. My parents moved back to England .... I was five.
   a) as b) ago c) when d) if
9. I found a flat .... last year.
   a) no word b) ago c) for d) when

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Did you live here <u>ago</u> 2010? (........................)
2. When did your parents <u>got</u> married? (........................)
3. They didn't <u>went</u> to the wedding. (........................)
4. I <u>have</u> a maths lesson yesterday. (........................)
5. Nada <u>didn't</u> busy yesterday. (........................)

Lessons 1&2

General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Enas : Hello, Huda. Can I ask you some questions?
Huda : Hi, Enas. Sure.
Enas : Where (1)........................ your parents live when they were young?
Huda : They (2)........................ in Tanta.
Enas : What did your grandfather do?
Huda : He (3)........................ a farmer.
Enas : Really? (4)........................ he grow fruits?
Huda : Yes, of course.
Enas : What about your grandmother?
Huda : She (5)........................ work. She was a housewife.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. A .... is a large, dangerous animal that lives in the sea.
   a) shark **b)** eagle **c)** turtle **d)** crab
2. My brother .... a prize last year.
   a) borrowed **b)** got **c)** lent **d)** made
3. Scientists do experiments to .... how things work.
   a) find out **b)** improve **c)** practise **d)** touch
4. Everybody works hard to be ....
   a) success **b)** successful
   c) succeed **d)** successfully
5. He had a terrible accident and .... a leg.
   a) won **b)** lost **c)** missed **d)** threw
6. They started a .... to help people from poor families with the disease.
   a) foundation **b)** solution
   c) pollution **d)** introduction
7. A .... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.
   a) sports coach **b)** surgeon
   c) police officer **d)** hero

8. She .... her children to school because the school bus didn't come.

a) drives b) drive c) drove d) driving

9. He .... a new house last week.

a) buy b) bought c) buys d) is buying

10. Karim and his wife had a baby a week ....

a) when b) last c) for d) ago

3 Read and correct the underlined words: 4

1. When he were 11, he played basketball. (........................)
2. Do you have a bicycle when you were young? (........................)
3. They wasn't in Alex last summer. (........................)
4. He went to a club next night. (........................)

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Your hero"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

25

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
...... / 30			...... / 25			...... / 55		
(1-14)	(15-24)	(25-30)	(1-12)	(13-20)	(21-25)	(1-25)	(26-45)	(46-55)

Notes

....
....
....
....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 26-28 WB pages 88 & 89

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3

charity	جمعية خيرية	family history	تاريخ الأسرة	proud (of)	فخور (بـ)
countryside	ريف	great grandfather	الجد الأكبر	scary	مخيف
earthquake	زلزال	great grandmother	الجدة الكبرى	serious	خطير/جاد
health emergency	طوارئ صحية	natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية	the Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر

Lesson 4

blood	دم	cut (n/v)	جرح/يجرح	infections	عدوى
bone	عظمة	function	وظيفة الشيء	jewellery	مجوهرات
breathe (d)	يتنفس	furniture	أثاث	mend (ed)	يصلح
broken	مكسور	idea	فكرة	plant (n/v) (ed)	نبات/يزرع
burn (n/v)	حرق/يحرق	infect (ed)	يعدى/يصيب	pump (n/v) (ed)	مضخة/يضخ

Parts of the body أجزاء الجسم

brain	المخ	heart	القلب	mouth	الفم
head	الرأس	lungs	الرئتان	stomach	المعدة

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3

Bilbeis	مدينة بلبيس	research (ed)	يبحث	sick = ill	مريض

Lesson 4

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	daughter	ابنة	special	خاص/مميز
Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	fill (ed)	يملأ	tomato plant	نبات الطماطم

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 3

have ▶	a home	لديه بيت	play ▶	the piano	يعزف على البيانو
live ▶	a healthy life	يعيش حياة صحية	sew ▶	cuts	يخيط الجروح
	a long life	يعيش حياة طويلة	start ▶	a charity	يبدأ فى عمل جمعية خيرية

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 3

do a project on يقوم بعمل مشروع عن	pleased with مسرور من	with good marks بدرجات جيدة

Lesson 4

a cut on جرح فى	cut into pieces يقطع إلى أجزاء	take in air يستنشق هواء
around حول	for example على سبيل المثال	write down يدون

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 3			
give	يعطى	gave	given
pay	يدفع (مالًا)	paid	paid
Lesson 4			
fall off	يقع من	fell off	fallen off

Language Notes

1

stop + (v + ing) يتوقف عن

stop (to + inf.) يتوقف لكى

- He stopped **sending** emails to me.
- He stopped **to buy** a bottle of water as he was thirsty.

2

breath (n) النَّفَس / **breathe (v)** يتنفس

- You can't take your breath underwater.
- Our lungs help us to breathe.

Write it right

How to write about past habits

كيفية الكتابة عن عادات قديمة

- When I was young, I used to live in (المكان).
- I used to (الأفعال التى اعتدت أن تفعلها).
- I didn't use to (الأفعال التى لم تعتد على فعلها).
- I used to go to (المكان) .
- There used to be ....
- There didn't use to be ....

Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns in your writing. There should be both long and short sentences.

استخدم نماذج متنوعة من الجمل. يجب أن تكون هناك جمل طويلة وأخرى قصيرة فى الفقرة.

Example

What you used or didn't use to do when you were young

That was so long ago, I don't remember. I used to spend time by myself. I didn't use to go out a lot. I used to do a lot of things. When I was young, I used to get up early and leave the house and go wherever I wanted to go on my bike. When I got home from school, I used to do my homework, then go out and play with all the other kids. I didn't use to help my mum with cooking. We used to live in a village when I was a kid. There didn't use to be a supermarket there. In the summers, we used to run to get ice cream. I used to go swimming every Thursday when I was young. We used to go to the same beach every summer.

Check Point:

Write a paragraph about "Your past habits":

"My past habits"

My name's Amal. When I was young, ...

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Why do you think it is important to know about your family history?

3. Listen to Yasser talking about his family history and answer the questions.

SB page 26



I didn't use to know very much about my family history. Then, last week, I did a school project[1] about someone in my family, so I did some research and I found out some really interesting things about my great grandfather. I knew he used to be a doctor, but I didn't know he worked for a charity!

(1) مشروع
(2) الريف
(3) الهلال الأحمر
(4) كارثة طبيعية
(5) طوارئ
(6) زلزال
(7) مخيف
(8) فخور

My great grandfather used to live in the countryside[2] and he worked as a volunteer doctor for the Red Crescent[3] when there was a natural disaster[4] or a health emergency[5]. For example, when there was an earthquake[6], my great grandfather went to help. The work was difficult and sometimes scary[7]. He also used to look after people who didn't have much money. I feel very proud[8] of him.

Post-listening question:

- Why is Yasser proud of his great grandfather?

Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- What do you know about Dr. Magdy Yacoub?

2. Read about Magdy Yacoub and complete the text.

WB page 88

We should all be proud[1] of Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but the family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, he used to work in a special hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy used to help to give people new hearts[2] for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often used to die. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity[3] for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

(1) فخور
(2) قلب
(3) جمعية خيرية



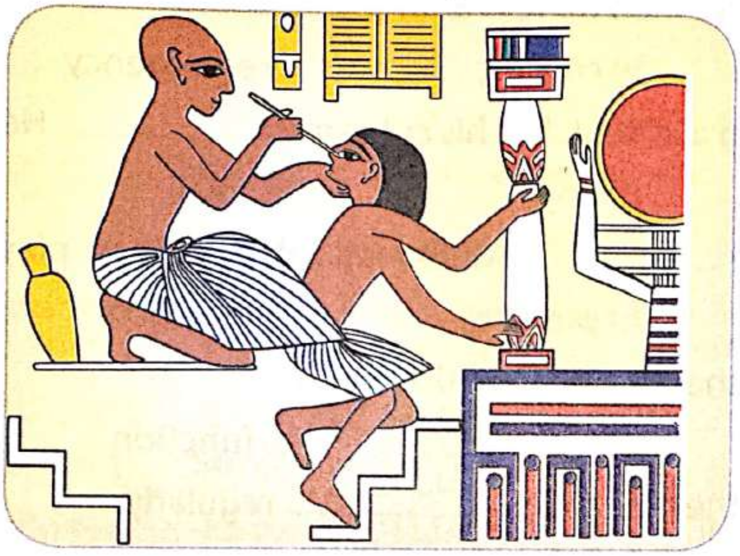
Post-reading question:
- What are the main achievements of Dr. Magdy Yacoub?

Lesson 4

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- Did Ancient Egyptians use to have doctors?

2. Read the article. Which parts of the body from Exercise 1 did Ancient Egyptian doctors understand some things about? ***SB page 28***



Ancient Egyptian doctors

We know how Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients[1] because they wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago.

The body

Ancient Egyptians doctors understood that the heart[2] pumps[3] blood[4] around the body. However, they used to think that the heart also pumped air[5] to our lungs[6]! They were also the first people to understand some of the things the brain[7] did, but they did not know how important it was.

Ways to help

Doctors used to use plants to help people with burns[8] and to stop infections[9]. We still use some of these plants today. They also knew how to mend[10] broken bones[11] and sew cuts[12], but they didn't use to know everything. For example, they used to think that an animal's eye helped people who could not see!

(1) المرضى
(2) القلب
(3) يضخ
(4) الدم
(5) الهواء
(6) الرئتان
(7) المخ
(8) الحروق
(9) العدوى
(10) يصلح
(11) عظام
(12) جروح

Post-reading question:
- What did Ancient Egyptian doctors use to help sick people?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. An earthquake is a natural .... that causes lots of terrible things.
   a) event b) volunteer c) dream d) disaster
2. Use this door only when there is a/an ....
   a) review b) concert c) emergency d) wedding
3. My cousin had an accident, but his cuts aren't .... He'll be OK soon.
   a) serious b) tiny c) small d) safe
4. All Egyptians are .... of Mohamed Salah, the best player in the world.
   a) worried b) proud c) crowded d) busy
5. Can you tell me the .... of the brain?
   a) homework b) job c) function d) work
6. The heart helps the body to have .... regularly.
   a) fuel b) ice c) water d) blood
7. Women usually wear .... which is made of gold.
   a) furniture b) jewellery c) scarf d) clothes
8. You shouldn't drink polluted water to be safe from ....
   a) infections b) infect c) infected d) infects
9. Our lungs help us to ....
   a) infect b) pump c) breath d) breathe
10. Dr. Magdy Yacoub .... a charity to help poor people.
    a) started b) finished c) continued d) ended
11. He fell off his bike and had many ....
    a) burns b) cuts c) broken d) jumps
12. The .... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature. WB
    a) countryside b) city c) town d) ocean
13. My friend had an accident, so he had a .... arm.
    a) break b) broke c) breaking d) broken

Language

(used to) for regular past habits and routines

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use (used to + inf.) to talk about habits or states that were true in the past but are not true now.**

- نستخدم (used to + inf.) للتعبير عن عادة كنا نفعلها فى الماضى، أما الآن فهى لا تحدث.

Form التكوين

Subject + used to ▶ inf. اعتاد أن

- He used to **live** in the countryside.
- Yasser's grandmother used to **work** in a hospital.

Negative النفى

Subject + didn't use to ▶ inf.

- I didn't use to **know** much about my family history.
- When he was young, he didn't use to **play** tennis, **but now he does**.

Question السؤال

Did + **sub.** + use to ▶ **inf.?**

1. Yes/No questions:

- Did she use to **live** in Cairo?
- Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.
- When you were six, did you use to **do** a different hobby?
- Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

2. Wh-questions:

- إذا كانت هناك كلمة استفهام توضع قبل (did).

Question word + **did + sub.** + use to ▶ **inf.?**

- Where did you use to **live**?
  - We used to **live** in a village.
- What did Anas use to **do** when he was six?
  - He used to **play** computer games.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I used to .... tennis when I was at school.
   a) play b) playing c) played d) plays
2. We .... go to the cinema at the weekends.
   a) didn't use to b) used c) use to d) didn't use
3. They .... in the countryside, but now they live in the city.
   a) used to living b) use to live
   c) used to live d) using to live
4. .... play computer games when you were younger?
   a) Did you used b) Does he use to
   c) Did you use to d) Did you use
5. What music .... to like when you were a child?
   a) used you b) did you use
   c) use you d) did you used
6. They both .... have short hair. They have long hair now.
   a) used to b) didn't use to c) used d) didn't use
7. I used to .... hard when I was a student.
   a) working b) work c) worked d) works
8. .... you use to have any different hobbies?
   a) Did b) Will c) Were d) Are
9. When she was a child, Yasser's mum used .... the piano.
   a) to b) to playing c) to play d) playing

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. We used to playing basketball after school. (........................)
2. Japan didn't use to is a rich country. (........................)
3. Does your uncle use to live in Tunisia? (........................)
4. What did you used to do at six? (........................)
5. I don't use to drive a modern car. (........................)
6. I used to go to school on foot, but now I do. (........................)

Speaking

Discussing family history

مناقشة تاريخ العائلة

Where did your parents use to live when they were young?
أين اعتاد والداك أن يعيشا فى الماضى؟

They lived in Tanta. أعتادا أن يعيشا فى طنطا.

When you were ten, did you use to live in a different house?
عندما كنتَ فى العاشرة، هل اعتدت أن تعيش فى منزل مختلف؟

Yes, I did. نعم.

Did you use to have different hobbies?
هل اعتدت أن يكون لديك هوايات أخرى؟

No, I didn't. لا.

Did you use to walk to school?
هل اعتدت أن تمشى للمدرسة؟

No. I used to cycle to school.
لا. اعتدت أن أذهب بالدراجة.

Did you use to have the same friends?
هل اعتدت أن يكون لديك نفس الأصدقاء؟

No. I used to have many friends.
لا. اعتدت أن يكون لى العديد من الأصدقاء.

Type a message

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

Mazin : Hello, Hany.

Hany : Hello, Mazin.

Mazin : Did you (1).. to live in Cairo when yo
were young?

Hany : (2).. . I used to live in Giza.

Mazin : Did you use to (3).. to school?

Hany : Yes. I used to go to school on foot.

Mazin : What hobby (4).. you use to do?

Hany : I used to read stories. What about you?

Mazin : I used to (5).. .

Hany : Great.

Lessons 3&4

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Why did Yacoub's aunt die? - Because of her ....
   a) heart b) brain c) lungs d) head
2. When was Yacoub born?
   a) In 1953. b) In 1935. c) In 1930. d) In 1950.
3. How old was Yacoub's aunt when she died?
   a) 12 years. b) 21 years. c) 20 years. d) 22 years.
4. What was Yacoub's father's job?
   a) A scientist. b) A programmer. c) An engineer. d) A surgeon.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. My grandfather used to live in the .... Now he lives in the city with us.
   a) tent b) town c) countryside d) continent
2. Our lungs help us to take .... air to breathe.
   a) in b) after c) off d) for
3. A .... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home.
   a) group b) prison c) thief d) charity
4. My sister passed all her exams with good marks, and we are very ....
   a) small b) proud c) easy d) late
5. My house is very big. It has a lot of ....
   a) medicine b) experience c) information d) furniture
6. I don't know much about my family ....
   a) history b) date c) geography d) maths
7. My sister is a .... for the Red Crescent.
   a) teacher b) scientist c) volunteer d) charity

8. I .... go to the beach every day when I had a holiday in Alexandria.
   a) use to b) uses to c) used to d) use
9. I didn't .... watch television.
   a) use to b) uses to c) used to d) use
10. Did they .... to go to the cinema?
   a) used to b) use c) used d) use to

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. Pele <u>use</u> to play football in Brazil. (........................)
2. We didn't <u>used</u> swim in the river. (........................)
3. My mother used to <u>cooking</u> for me, but now my wife cooks at home. (........................)
4. <u>He used</u> to watch too much TV? (........................)

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

6

"Your past habits"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks
...... / 30	...... / 24	...... / 54
(1-14) (15-24) (25-30)	(1-12) (13-20) (21-24)	(1-25) (26-45) (46-54)

Notes

....

....

....

....

Lessons 5&6

SB pages 29 & 30 WB pages 90 & 91

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 5

art	رسم/فن	painting	لوحة	society	مجتمع
brave	شجاع	rubbish collector	جامع القمامة	statue	تمثال
discussion	مناقشة	scared (of)	خائف (من)	street cleaner	منظف الشارع

Lesson 6

captain	قائد الفريق	education	التعليم	manager	مدير
confuse (d)	يتحير/يرتبك	firefighter	رجل إطفاء	organisation	منظمة
difference	اختلاف	heroic	بطولي	studies	دراسات

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 6

Athens	مدينة أثينا	modern	حديث/عصري	Parthenon	معبد البارثينون
collect (ed)	يجمع	New Cairo	القاهرة الجديدة	reason	سبب

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 5

keep ▶ clean	يحافظ على نظافة	try ▶ their best	يبذلون قصارى جهدهم

Lesson 6

get ▶ a job	يحصل على وظيفة	the World Squash Championship	بطولة العالم للإسكواش
make ▶ a poster	يعد ملصقًا إعلانيًا		

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 5

in other words وبعبارة أخرى	pay for يدفع ثمن	useful for مفيد لـ

Lesson 6

answer to إجابة لـ	at Ain Shams University في جامعة عين شمس	most of معظم

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 5

dangerous خطير	safe آمن	useful مفيد	useless عديم الفائدة
difficult صعب	easy سهل	true صحيح	false خطأ

Language Notes

1 one of واحد من

- She became one of the most important nurses in Cairo.
- One of my friends is ill.

2 Study the following confusing words

it's إنه يكون	its ملكية غير العاقل المفرد	there هناك	their ملكهم
know يعرف	no لا	to إلى/لكى	too أيضا
then ثم	than من (للمقارنة)	two اثنان	

Write it right

How to write about someone you are proud of

كيفية الكتابة عن شخص تفتخر به

- I'm proud of (الشخص).
- He/She is (السن).
- He/She's very helpful.
- He/She (أفعاله).
- I admire him/her because (السبب).
- I want to be like him/her one day.

Writing tips

At the end of your email don't forget to write a concluding sentence to summarise the main idea.

- بنهاية رسالتك، لا تنس كتابة جملة لتلخيص الفكرة الرئيسية.

To : Mona
From : Sara
Subject : Someone I'm proud of

Hello Mona,

Of all the members in my family, my mother is the person I am proud of. She is 40 years. She looks much younger than her age with short hair and a beautiful face. She works hard. At work, she is respected by all of her friends. She is a useful person in society. My mother always does the housework well. She is a very good cook. I really admire her for her wonderful dishes. She often spends her free time cooking delicious dishes for us, which makes everyone in my family happy. What's more, my mother is an excellent adviser. I always love her and I will always be proud of her.

Write soon.

Sara

Check Point:

Write an email to your friend Hazem about someone you admire. Your name is Sameh.

Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Tell us about a person you respect the most.

1. Listen to two people having a class discussion. Tick the correct topic.

SB page 29



Mona: What is a hero[1], Huda?

Huda: I think a hero is someone who is very brave[2].

Mona: What do you mean[3]?

Huda: I mean a hero isn't scared[4] of anything.

Mona: I think a hero is someone who is scared, but still tries his or her best.

Huda: I'm not sure what you mean.

Mona: In other words, they often do difficult or dangerous things.

Huda: It's also about putting other people first.

Mona: Sorry, I don't understand[5].

Huda: I mean a hero helps other people.

Mona: Yes, I agree[6]!

(1) بطل

(2) شجاع

(3) يعنى

(4) خائف

(5) يفهم

(6) يتفق

Post-listening question:

- Do you agree with Huda? Why?

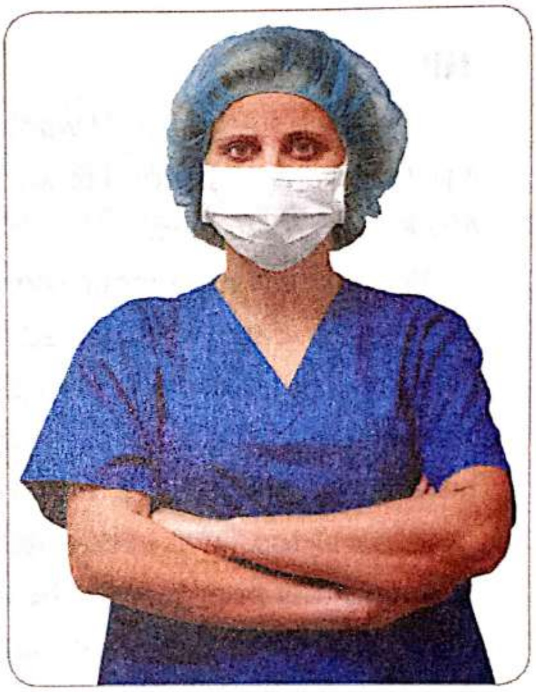
Lesson 6

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- Who is your hero?

1. Read the article. Who is the writer's hero? Why? ***SB page 30***

My heroic mother



Today, my mother is an important nurse, Mrs Karima Mohamed, but I know that her life used to be difficult. She studied to be a nurse at Ain Shams University and used to work as a nurse, too, sometimes at night, to learn all she could. She then got a job at a big hospital in Cairo. She continued to work hard but did not stop her studies, and soon she became one of the most important nurses in Cairo.

Now, she works in a big hospital in New Cairo. In 2020, many people became ill and she worked every day for many weeks. It was difficult, but heroic(1) work, because most of them got better. She is also a manager(2) and she helps to teach younger nurses.

I think she is a hero because she studied and worked very hard to get an important job and now she helps people every day. She always tells me that education(3) is very important, and that if I work hard, I can do anything.

بطولى (1)
مدير (2)
التعليم (3)

Post-reading question:
- Why do you think Mrs Karima is a hero?

Lesson 6 **Reading Text**

Pre-reading question:
- What does your mother do?

2. Read the email and write the sentences a-c in the right places. ***WB page 91***

Hi!



My name's Adam and I want to write about a person I am very proud to know. *Her name's Mrs Karima Mohamed.*

When she was younger, she used to study very hard because she wanted to be a nurse. She also used to work to help pay for her studies, but that is not the reason I am proud of her! In 2020, there was a health emergency and many people were in hospital. *I became ill, too.* I was in hospital for two weeks and Mrs Karima Mohamed helped me and other people in the hospital. She was always very kind. I now know that she is one of the most important nurses in Cairo, so I am very happy she helped me. *I am very proud of her.*

Post-reading question:
- What does Mrs Karima Mohamed do?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I always feel .... of dark places.
   a) happy b) scared
   c) hungry d) busy
2. Our streets are clean because .... don't leave any paper there.
   a) rubbish collectors b) volunteers
   c) shop workers d) sellers
3. My neighbour, Mr Said, is .... He saved a little girl from fire.
   a) safe b) dangerous
   c) serious d) brave
4. My mother did some .... work that made me proud of her.
   a) dangerous b) boring
   c) heroic d) scary
5. I went to the museum and saw many .... of Ancient Egyptians there.
   a) statues b) emails
   c) selfies d) villas
6. My father is the most important doctor at his hospital. He is the ....
   a) worker b) manager
   c) cleaner d) waiter
7. We should .... our country clean.
   a) keep b) save
   c) store d) live
8. My father is the person who .... for our needs.
   a) does b) makes
   c) buys d) pays
9. A/An .... is the person who helps people when there is fire.
   a) firefighter b) engineer
   c) surgeon d) waiter
10. Milk is useful .... children.
    a) at b) in
    c) on d) for

Speaking

Checking understanding

التأكد من الفهم

Asking for clarification طلب توضيح أمر ما	Clarification توضيح أمر ما
What do you mean? ماذا تعنى؟	I mean, ... أنا أعنى ....
I'm not sure what you mean. لست متأكدًا مما تعنيه.	In other words, ... بمعنى آخر ....
Sorry, I don't understand. آسف، لا أفهم.	
Agreeing عند الاتفاق مع شخص فى الكلام	**Disagreeing** عند عدم الاتفاق مع شخص
Yes, I agree. أنا أتفق معك.	I don't agree. لا أتفق معك.
That's true. / Yes, that's true. هذا حقيقى.	- I'm not sure about that. لست متأكدًا من ذلك.

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue: SB

Mona : What's a hero, Huda?
Huda : I think a hero is someone who is brave.
Mona : (1) .... do you mean?
Huda : I mean a hero isn't scared of anything.
Mona : I think a hero is someone who is scared, but still tries their best.
Huda : I'm not (2) .... what you mean.
Mona : In other (3) ...., they often do difficult or dangerous things.
Huda : It's also about putting other people first.
Mona : (4) ...., I don't understand.
Huda : I (5) .... a hero helps other people.

Lessons 5 & 6

General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

SB 5

A : I think rubbish collectors can be heroes.

B : What do you (1) .... ?

A : I mean, we need rubbish collectors.

B : Sorry, I don't (2) ....

A : I mean, they do something very useful. The city would be terrible without them.

B : That's (3) .... What about street cleaners?

A : I'm not sure (4) .... you mean.

B : I mean, street cleaners are also important because they help to keep our cities clean.

A : Yes, that's true.

B : Yes, I (5) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. Everyone in our society should .... their best.
   a) try b) dry c) die d) tie
2. .... is for younger people.
   a) Old b) Emergency c) Senior d) Junior
3. My mother works .... the university.
   a) on b) with c) at d) of
4. Could you tell me the .... why you always come late?
   a) reason b) result c) event d) cause
5. The teacher asked us to .... a poster on our project.
   a) make b) play c) spend d) give
6. When my mother was younger, she worked at a hospital and continued her ....
   a) reports b) studies c) answers d) heroes
7. .... is for older people.
   a) Infant b) Baby c) Senior d) Junior

8. There .... three restaurants in this town, but two closed down leaving only one.
   a) using to   b) used to   c) used to be   d) was
9. Did you .... a lot of photos when you were in Moscow last year?
   a) take   b) took   c) taking   d) taken
10. How many hours a day .... to go to school when you were ten?
   a) did you   b) did you use
   c) you did   d) you did use

3 Read and correct the underlined words: (4)

1. What do you do last weekend? (........................)
2. Yesterday, Gamal arrives at the airport at half past ten. (........................)
3. Before he got married, Yasser's dad didn't used to live in Cairo. (........................)
4. He visits his grandparents every weekend when he was young. (........................)

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: (6)

"A person you admire"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

25

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
.... / 30			.... / 25			.... / 55		
(1-14)	(15-24)	(25-30)	(1-12)	(13-20)	(21-25)	(1-25)	(26-45)	(46-55)

Notes

....
....
....
....

Video Script

There are some great jobs that you can do. Many great jobs do something to help other people.

Many people think that being a firefighter[1] is a great job because they save[2] people's lives. Sometimes they have to do dangerous things to save people.

It is also a great job to be a doctor or nurse. They save the lives of people every day. Many people think they are heroes!

This is a famous doctor called Professor Rashad Barshoum. He was born in Asyut in 1941.

Today, he is one of the most important kidney[3] doctors in the world.

He also teaches people to become doctors at Cairo University. One day these people will save lives and be new heroes.

A lot of people think teachers are heroes.

They teach us to read, to write and to do many other things.

Which job would you like to do? Will you be a hero?

0:00

(1) رجال الإطفاء

(2) ينقذ

(3) الكلى

Unit 3 Review

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

art	رسم/فن	expert	خبير	organisation	منظمة
attack (ed)	يهاجم	firefighter	رجل إطفاء	pay for	يدفع ثمنًا
Baheya Foundation	مؤسسة بهية (لعلاج السرطان)	furniture	أثاث	proud (of)	فخور (بـ)
blood	دم	heart	القلب	pump (n/v) (ed)	مضخة/يضخ
bone	عظم	hero	بطل	rubbish collector	جامع القمامة
brain	المخ	heroic	بطولى	scared (of)	خائف (من)
brave	شجاع	improve (d)	يُحسِّن	serious	خطير/جاد
breathe (d)	يتنفس	improve a sport	يُحسِّن رياضة	society	مجتمع
burn (n/v)	حرق/يحرق	infect (ed)	يعدى/يصيب	staff	طاقم العمل
cancer	سرطان	infections	عدوى	start a charity	يبدأ فى عمل جمعية خيرية
charity	جمعية خيرية	jewellery	مجوهرات	statue	تمثال
countryside	الريف	keep clean	يحافظ على نظافة	stomach	المعدة
cut (n/v)	جرح/يجرح	lungs	الرئتان	studies	دراسات
date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	manager	مدير	successful	ناجح
disease	مرض	medicine	دواء	take in air	يستنشق هواءً
earthquake	زلزال	mend (ed)	يصلح	the Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر
education	التعليم	modern technology	التكنولوجيا الحديثة	treatment	علاج
emergency	حالة طوارئ	natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية	volunteer	متطوع

Jobs الوظائف

charity worker	عامل فى جمعية خيرية	scientist	عالم	street cleaner	منظف الشارع
nuclear scientist	عالم نووى	sports coach	مدرب رياضى	surgeon	جراح

Language

1 *The past simple tense*

- I lived in the country when I was young.
- I didn't **live** in a city.
- Did you **walk** to school yesterday?
- Where did you **go** last weekend?

2 *(used to) for past habits*

- I used to sing when I was six.
- I didn't use to travel to many places.
- Did your mother use to work in a hospital?
- Where did you use to live?

Speaking

Checking understanding

Asking for clarification:

- What do you mean?
- Sorry, I don't understand.
- I'm not sure what you mean.

Clarification:

- I mean, ...
- In other words, ...

Al-Azhar Corner

Based on Unit 3 أسئلة خاصة بأبنائنا طلبة الأزهر الشريف

1) Finish the following two-mini dialogues:

A) Salwa : Who's your hero?

Salem : ....

B) Waleed : ....?

Mohammed : I used to play in the street when I was young.

2) Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. A charity helps people who	**a)** with seven players in a team.
2. Handball is a sport	**b)** she worked and studied hard.
3. A surgeon helps people who	**c)** to 1935.
4. Yacoub was born	**d)** are poor, sick or don't have a home.
5. My mother is my hero because	**e)** have heart problems.
	f) in 1935.

Answers: **1.** (   ) **2.** (   ) **3.** (   ) **4.** (   ) **5.** (   )

3) Write a paragraph of about (7) sentences on:

"A person in your family you admire"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 3

Cumulative Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

1. Where is Noura living now?
   a) In Aswan. b) In Luxor. c) In Alex. d) In Giza.
2. Who is Noura?
   a) My cousin. b) My wife. c) My sister. d) My manager.
3. How old are you?
   a) 19 years. b) 24 years. c) 14 years. d) I don't know.
4. What kind of hair does Noura have?
   a) Short and curly. b) Long and straight.
   c) Short and brown. d) Long and curly.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Tourist : Is Elephantine Island a good place for fish?
Tarek : Do you (1)........................ you want to go fishing?
Tourist : Yes. That's (2)........................ . I like fishing.
Tarek : Yes. It is a popular place for people who like fishing. Have you thought about going to the desert?
Tourist : (3)........................ do you mean?
Tarek : Well, you can go to the White Desert. It's very exciting.
Tourist : Did you (4)........................ go there?
Tarek : Yes. I used to go to Farafra. It's a place in the White Desert.
Tourist : I (5)........................ what you mean.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

WB

6

My name is Sandy. I used to work in a bank, but now I work as a secretary in a company. I left the bank and joined the company seven years ago. I enjoy working here and I have made lots of friends. I met my husband in this company and we got married last year. Our manager, Mr Medhat, is a very nice man. He gave us three weeks off and he bought us a very nice wedding gift. When I am not working, I love spending time in

my garden. I grow plants and vegetables. When I was a little girl, I wanted to be a gardener. I always helped my parents in the garden. My husband likes gardening, too. We went to the garden centre last weekend and bought some new plants. My husband planted a new apple tree and some roses in the garden. I watered the tomato plants and the strawberries.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why is Mr Medhat a kind man?

   ....

2. Where does Sandy's husband work?

   ....

3. What does the underlined word "gift" mean?

   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Sandy used to help her parents in the ....
   a) park b) garden c) farm d) barn
5. Sandy wanted to .... when she was young.
   a) get married b) work in a bank
   c) be a gardener d) plant apple trees
6. .... planted the apple tree.
   a) The husband b) Sandy
   c) The manager d) None of them

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. Cancer is a dangerous ....
   a) treatment b) foundation c) charity d) disease
2. The .... at my school are very friendly. I like them all.
   a) nurses b) staff c) pilots d) sailors
3. .... doctors and nurses use modern technology to help patients.
   a) Silly b) Bored c) Expert d) Rude
4. My aunt died .... cancer.
   a) out b) off c) at d) from
5. .... take in air and help us to breathe. SB
   a) Legs b) Ears c) Lungs d) Eyes

6. The .... tells the parts of our body what to do. SB

a) brain b) nose c) head d) ear

7. This football has no air inside. I need a .... to fill it. WB

a) pump b) cut c) burn d) plant

8. He came in, took off his coat and .... down.

a) sit b) sat c) sitting d) used to sit

9. I.............................. to enjoy studying, but I do now.

a) didn't used b) didn't
c) didn't use d) didn't using

10. I.............................. smoke when I was a child.

a) didn't use to b) didn't used to
c) didn't use d) don't use

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. I used to <u>had</u> short hair when I was a teenager. (..........................)
2. She <u>used</u> be able to ride a bike very well. (..........................)
3. In the evenings, we usually <u>go</u> to the club last week. (..........................)
4. Where <u>do</u> you spend your last holiday? (..........................)

6 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Dina to tell her about your hero. Your name is Yasmin.

6

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

35

Unit 3

Research Projects

1. Your hero

Do a research on "Your hero". Use these guiding points to help you:

- What is your hero like?/ Why do you consider him/her to be a hero?
- Why do you admire him/her?
- The difference he/she made in other people's lives.
- Other types of heroes that we need to appreciate and take care of.



2. Your past habits

Do a research on "Your past habits". Use these guiding points to help you:

- Where were you born?
- What did you use to do?/ What didn't you use to do?
- What things did you not use to do and you regret that now?



Research steps

1. A suitable title
2. An introduction
3. Main ideas and information
4. The results
5. Resources

What do you think of doctors and nurses? Can you mention some of their heroic actions?



....

....

....

....

....

Review A Units 1, 2 & 3



Tapescript

Review A

SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 93 & 94

Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Where did you live when you were younger? Who did you live with?

2. Listen to Dalia talking to her father. Check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 32



Dalia : Hi Dad, I'm doing a school project about our family history. Can I ask you some questions?

Dad : Of course, what do you want to know?

Dalia : Where did you live when you were a child? Was it in Luxor?

Dad : No, I moved to[1] Luxor when I was a teenager[2]. When I was a child, I used to live in a village outside the city.

(1) ينتقل إلى
(2) مراهق
(3) الأجداد

Dalia : Oh, I see. Who did you live with?

Dad : I lived with my mum, dad, my sisters and also my grandparents[3]. We used to live in my grandparents' house.

Dalia : What time did you usually get up?

Dad : Very early! On a school day, I got up at about 4:30 am!

Dalia : Really? Why did you get up so early?

Dad : Because my school was very far from where we lived. It took me an hour to get there.

Dalia : How did you travel to school?

Dad : I went on my bike. We didn't have a car then.

Dalia : What subjects did and didn't you like at school?

Dad : My favourite subject was maths, but I didn't like history.

Post-listening question:

- Why did Dalia's father have to wake up early?

Lesson 1 Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Do you like school trips? Where did you go last time?

2. Listen and label the picture with the correct names (you do not need to label all the people in the picture).

WB page 93



My name's Hana. This is a picture of my class. We are walking through an attractive park on a school trip. There are three teachers with us. Our English teacher, Miss Badr, is on the left, near a large lake. I am in the foreground, with my best friends Lamia and Ola. I am in the middle and Lamia is on the right. My twin cousins Azza and Randa are in the background. Azza has a dark blue jumper and a striped school bag.

Post-listening question:

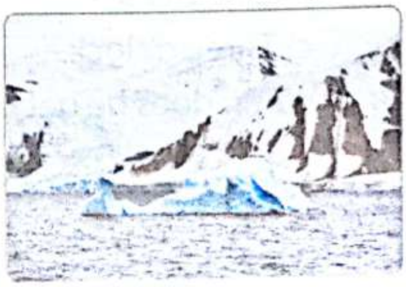
- How many students are there in Hana's class?

Lesson 2 — Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What do you know about **Antarctica**?

2. Read the text again and match the questions 1–3 to the answers a–c. *SB page 33*

Life in Antarctica



(a) Why did you come to work in Antarctica?

I used to work as a scientist at a university. Then, I saw a job advertisement for scientists to work in Antarctica for a year and thought it looked interesting.

(b) What is daily life like in Antarctica?

Some things are the same as home! We usually get up at about 7am. We have breakfast and do some exercise. Then we start work at 9 am and finish at 5 pm. We eat dinner together and then watch TV, play some games or read.

(c) What is different about life in Antarctica?

At the moment, it is winter, so it is dark all day and night! The weather is very cold and windy. There are only 20 people working here now.
I miss my friends and family, but it is an amazing experience!

Post-reading question: - Would you like to live in Antarctica? Why/Why not?

Lesson 2 — Reading Text

5. Write a reply to this email from a penfriend in Canada. *SB page 33*

Hi!

How are you? I wanted your help with something. My homework is to write about life for children around the world. I have some questions about life in Egypt when you were a little child. What games did you use to play? What did your favourite toy use to be? What did you use to eat?

I hope you can answer the questions for me.

Write soon!

Max

Practice A

Based on Units 1, 2 & 3

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

4. When does Hossam come back from school?
   - a) One o'clock.
   - b) Two o'clock.
   - c) Three o'clock.
   - d) Four o'clock.
5. When does he get up?
   - a) Late.
   - b) Early.
   - c) 8 am.
   - d) 9 am.
6. What does he do at 7.30? - He ....
   - a) sleeps
   - b) washes
   - c) watches TV
   - d) has breakfast
7. When does he do his homework?
   - a) In the morning.
   - b) In the afternoon.
   - c) In the evening.
   - d) At night.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Samy : Hello, Ahmed.
Ahmed : Hi, Samy.
Samy : What is your (1).. sport, Ahmed?
Ahmed : My favourite sport is (2).. .
Samy : Oh, I like football too. (3).. do you practise it?
Ahmed : At school and sometimes in the club. (4).............................. about you?
Samy : I always play football in the school (5).. .
Ahmed : Great.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

6

Amira Salah has a Saudi Arabian penfriend called Aisha. Aisha is eleven years old. She was born in Riyadh. Aisha's father, the head teacher, wants all students in his school to learn new things. Her mother, Mrs Hoda, works as a doctor in a hospital nearby, so she doesn't use her car. Mrs Hoda works with ill or injured children. Aisha has got two brothers and one sister. Aisha is interested in watching TV. <u>She</u> also enjoys reading short stories. Amira always writes to Aisha's website and so does Aisha.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's Aisha's nationality?

....

2. Where was Amira's penfriend born?

....

3. What is Aisha's father's job?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mrs Hoda goes to her work ....
   a) by bus b) by car c) on foot d) by taxi
5. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to ....
   a) Aisha b) Amira c) Mrs Hoda d) Salah
6. Amira always writes to Aisha's ....
   a) email b) website c) blog d) letter

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. If you are ...., your parents will be proud of you.
   a) messy b) impolite c) loser d) successful
2. .... teachers work at STEM schools.
   a) Skills b) Expert c) Experience d) Hard
3. People put .... across windows to keep light out.
   a) wardrobes b) curtains c) carpets d) mirrors
4. Children usually enjoy .... time with their grandparents.
   a) staying b) spending c) climbing d) watching
5. I'm .... to hear that. I hope he gets better soon.
   a) excited b) happy c) well d) sorry
6. The Alhassan .... helps disabled people.
   a) Community b) Foundation c) Society d) Ministry

7. Yasser's great grandfather lives in the .... where he works on a farm.
   a) continent   b) city   c) countryside   d) villa
8. .... Omar was 22, a shark attacked him, he lost a leg.
   a) In   b) If   c) When   d) Ago
9. I'm sitting under a tree and .... eating my lunch.
   a) hungry   b) hungrily   c) sad   d) quick
10. Hamdi .... coffee for breakfast. He likes to drink tea.
   a) doesn't drink   b) never drink
   c) don't drink   d) always drink

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. Hydi always is on time. (....................)
2. Who do you live? (....................)
3. Mr Osman is living in a lovely flat. (....................)
4. The cat is sitting in the sun lazy. (....................)

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

6

"Your city or village in the past"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

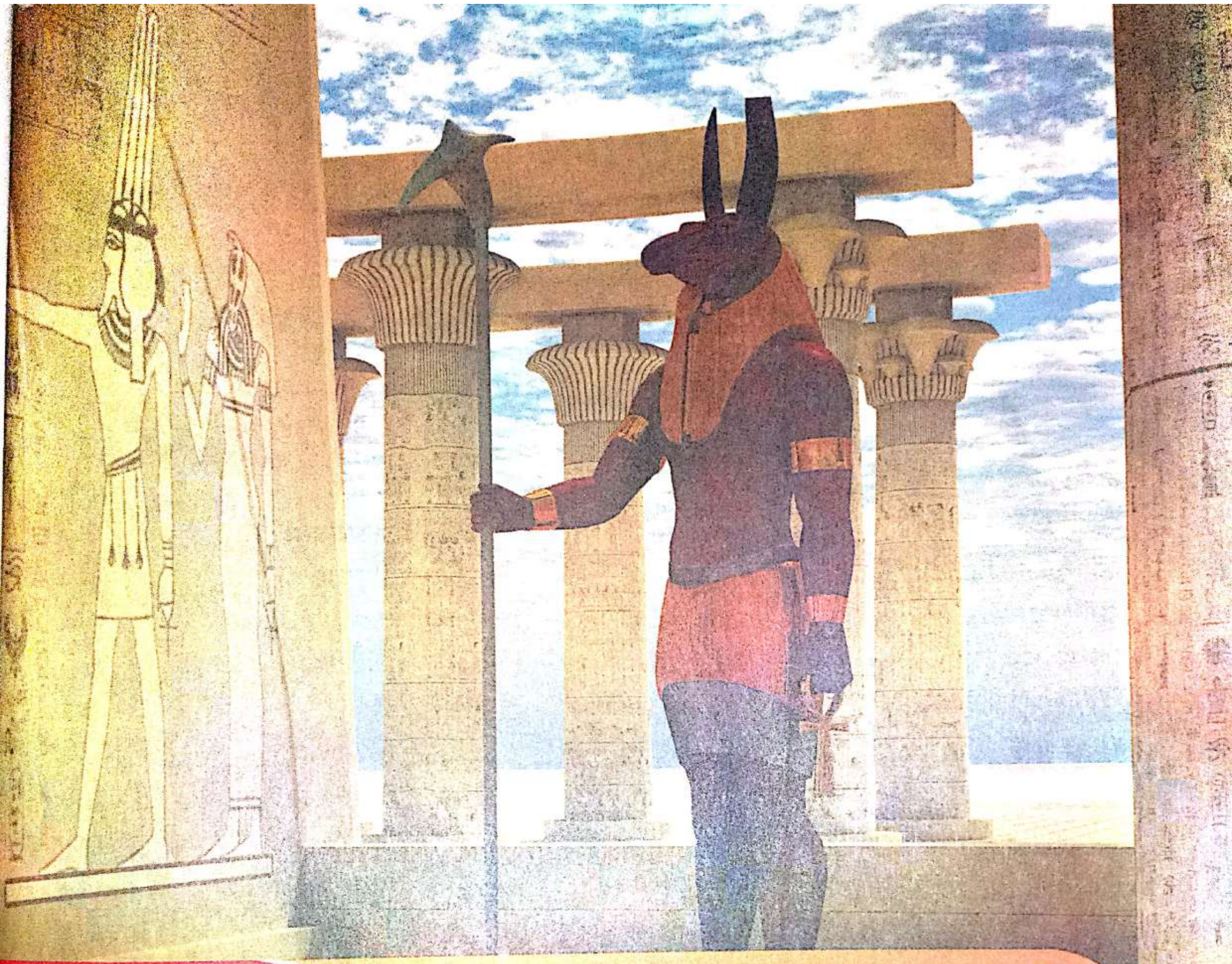
....

....

....

....

35



Unit 4 Into the past

Objectives of the unit

Reading : Reviews of historic places in Egypt; a student's account of Jerash; information about a museum; a text about a trip to a museum; a text about ancient objects

Writing : A description of a historic place; a report about a historic site

Listening : A talk about a school trip; a talk about a historic place; an account of a trip to a museum; a class debate

Speaking : Describing a historic place; a telephone call asking for information; a debate about the effects of tourism

Language : Past continuous

Life Skills : Environmental issues; self-management; critical thinking

Values : Co-existence values; respect

Tapescript

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات   SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب   تشير لأسئلة المتميزين

Lessons 1&2

SB pages 34-37 WB pages 95 & 96

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1

arch	قوس/قنطرة	historic	تاريخى	ruins	أطلال
castle	قلعة	mosque	مسجد	stadium	استاد
complete building	مبنى كامل	museum	متحف	statue	تمثال
culture	ثقافة	national	قومى/وطنى	temple	معبد
entrance (to)	مدخل (لـ)	pray (ed)	يصلى	theatre	مسرح

Lesson 2

amazing	مذهل	interesting	شيق	review	مقالة نقدية
ancient	أثرى/قديم جدًا	protect (ed)	يحمى	Roman	رومانى
awesome	رهيب/رائع	race	سباق	ticket	تذكرة
behave (d)	يتصرف	recommend (ed)	يرشح/يوصى بـ	time	عصر/عهد

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1

bin	سلة قمامة	object	شىء	sports match	مباراة رياضية
bring (brought)	يُحضر	picnic lunch	غداء النزهة	stone	حجر
get a guide	يحصل على مرشد	rubbish	قمامة	trip	رحلة
history	تاريخ	rule	قاعدة	wall	حائط

Lesson 2

concerning	بخصوص/متعلق بـ	Karnak Temple	معبد الكرنك	Roman times	العصور الرومانية

Places and countries أماكن وبلاد

Abydos	مدينة أبيدوس بأسيوط	Djenne	مدينة دجين (فى مالى)	Lebanon	دولة لبنان
Algeria	دولة الجزائر	Egypt	مصر	Leptis Magna	مدينة لبدة الكبرى (فى ليبيا)
Assyut	مدينة أسيوط	Giza	مدينة الجيزة	Libya	دولة ليبيا
Baalbeck	مدينة بَعْلَبَك	Jerash/Petra	مدينة جرش/بيترا	Mali	دولة مالى
Djemila	قرية جميلة (بالجزائر)	Jordan	مملكة الأردن		

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 1

bring ▶	rubbish home	يُحضر القمامة للمنزل		It's a long drive	إنها قيادة لفترة طويلة
	packed lunch	يُحضر غداء معلّبًا	leave ▶	straight away	يغادر على الفور
drop ▶	litter	يلقى القمامة	plan ▶	properly	يخطط بشكل مناسب

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 1

a bottle of water زجاجة مياه	for the whole day طوال اليوم	on this road فى هذا الطريق
At which of the places? فى أى الأماكن؟	in time فى الوقت المناسب	on time فى الوقت المحدد

Lesson 2

a day out يوم فى الخارج	go in يدخل	on a hill على التل
date to يرجع تاريخه إلى	in the future فى المستقبل	through من خلال
go back to يعود/يرجع إلى	interested in مهتم بـ	view of منظر لـ

Language Notes

1

historic ذو أهمية تاريخية (له وجود فى التاريخ)/هام جدًا

history مادة التاريخ

- I like visiting historic places.
- My favourite subject is history.

2

arrive at + مكان محدد تمامًا (مدرسة/بيت/مكتب/مطار)

arrive in + مكان غير محدد (بلد/مدينة/قرية)

- He arrives at school on time.
- He arrived in Cairo last night.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists like visiting .... places in Egypt.
   a) historian b) history c) historic d) stories
2. My father always arrives .... his office on time.
   a) at b) on c) off d) out

Write it right

How to write about a historic place

كيفية الكتابة عن مكان تاريخى

- I visited one of the greatest historic places in (المدينة/البلد).
- It's the (المكان).
- I studied about it in my history lessons.
- It was built by (اسم صاحب المبنى).
- It was built in (تاريخ البناء).
- It was built to (سبب البناء).
- It is one of the most awesome historic places.

Writing tips

Use capital letters at the beginning of a sentence, for names, cities, countries and touristic sites.

استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع بداية الجملة وأسماء الأشخاص والمدن والدول والمعالم السياحية.

Example

A historic place you visited

I visited one of the greatest historic places in India, the Taj Mahal in Agra. I went there with my mum and dad. It is very huge in size. I studied about the Taj Mahal at school, I also saw its pictures. But watching it with my eyes was like a dream that came true. It was built by Shah Jahan around 1630s. He built it as a gift to his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. This history made it more interesting. It took around 22 years to build. People think that Shah Jahan cut off the hands of the workers who built it so that no similar building could be built. Therefore, this is one of the most awesome historic places.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about "An ancient place":

"An ancient place"

I visited one of the greatest historic places in ....

....

....

....

....

....

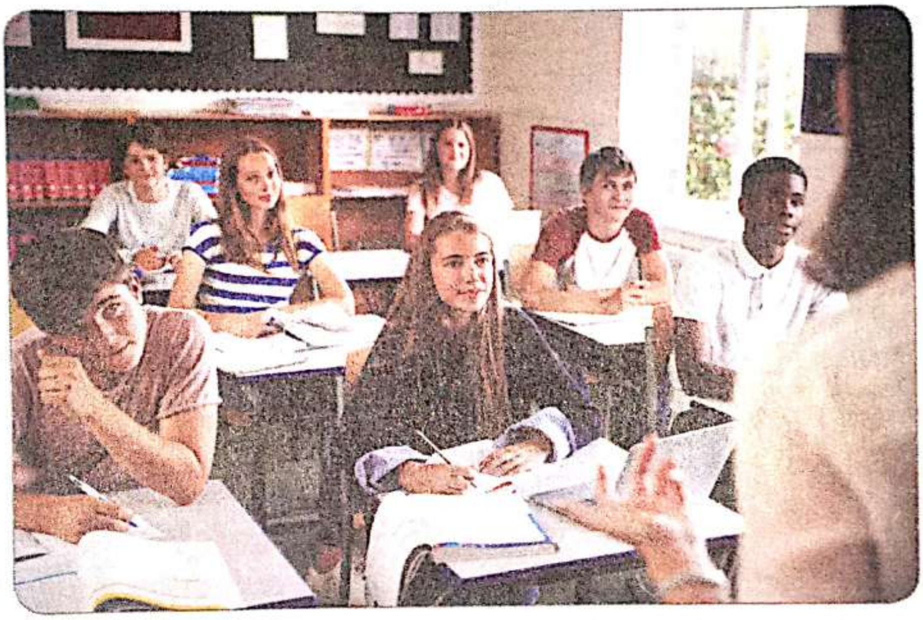
Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- How do you plan for a school trip?

2. Listen to the teacher. What is she telling the class about? ***SB page 35***



(1) ثقافة
(2) يحمي

Teacher: I'm sure you're all excited about visiting the Pyramids next Sunday. It's important that we plan our trip properly, so I need to talk to you about rules.

On Sunday morning, you must arrive at school on time so that we can leave straight away. It's a long drive to Giza from the school. We're going to be away from school for the whole day, so you must bring a packed lunch. It's going to be very hot, so you must also bring a hat and a bottle of water.

Of course, the Pyramids are very important to the history and culture[1] of our country. We must help to protect[2] them. You mustn't climb the Pyramids or sit on them. You mustn't drop litter. We must bring all of our rubbish home with us.

So, are there any questions about the trip?

Post-listening question:

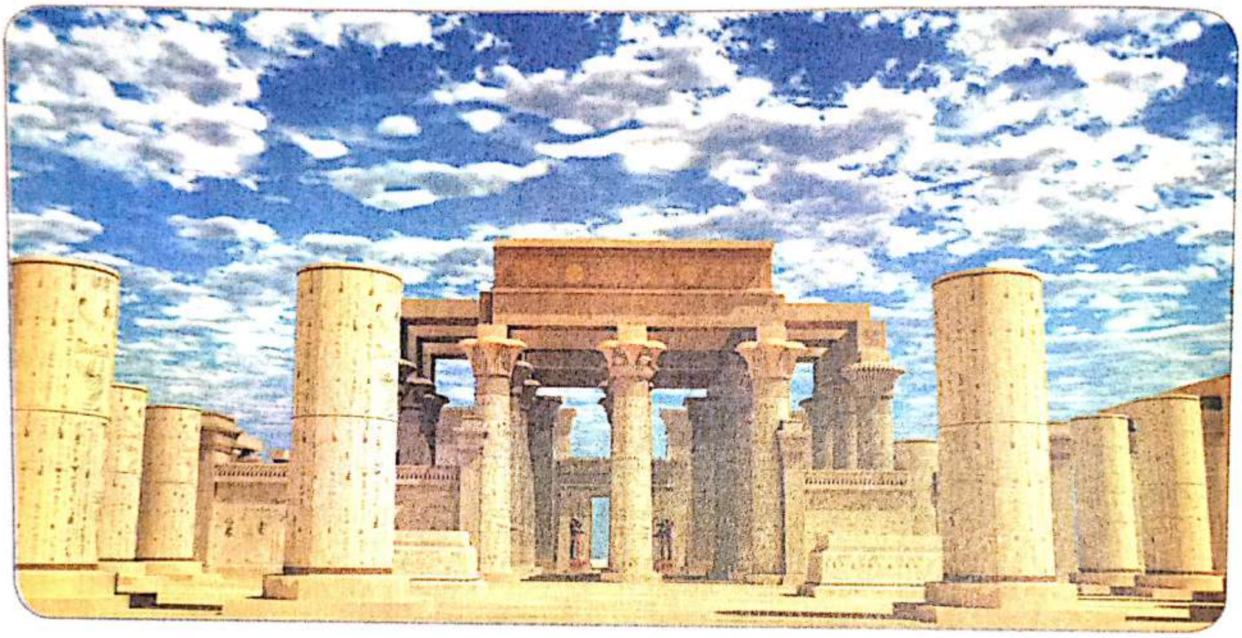
- How can the students protect the Pyramids?

Lesson 1 **Reading Text**

Pre-reading question:

- Did you visit a special place before? What did you do before visiting it?

3. Complete the text with must or mustn't. *WB page 95*



It is a long walk to the temple[1] so you must all listen carefully. It is hot today, so you must all wear a hat. You must take some water, too. Cars mustn't drive on this road so we can walk on it safely[2]. However, you mustn't stay on the road and you must walk. You mustn't run. When we arrive at the temple, you mustn't touch any of the building because it is very old. We can eat our picnic lunches[3] after we visit the temple, but you mustn't eat in the temple. Finally, you mustn't forget to write about what you see!

(1) معبد
(2) بأمان
(3) غداء النزهة

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think there are many things to do and not to do when visiting a historic place?

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- Where's the Roman theatre?

1. *Read the reviews and answer the questions.* *SB page 36*



رائع (1)
بقايا / أطلال (2)
يتخيل (3)

An amazing day out! ★★★★★

I visited Abydos last week with my cousins. There's so much to see: temples, amazing art and ruins in the desert. I'm not usually very interested in history, but this place is awesome[1]!

Maged, Cairo

Get a guide ★★★★

The ruins[2] at the Karnak Temple were amazing and we really enjoyed our visit! It's a big place, so you need three or four hours to walk around it. It's also a good idea to get a guide to tell you all about the history.

Leila, Assyut

Go back to Roman times! ★★★★★

I visited the Roman theatre in Alexandria with my cousins last week. It is easy to imagine[3] what life in Roman times was like here. There are also statues and the ruins of a temple in the museum there. It was great fun.

Samir, Giza

Post-reading question:
- Why is it a good idea to get a guide when you visit ancient places?

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- What do you know about Jerash?

3. Read about Jerash and match the photos A-D to the paragraphs 1-4. ***SB page 37***

The City of Jerash *By Azza*

Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan. It is more than 2,000 years old!

When you go there, the first thing you see is the entrance (1) to the city. The arch (2) is very tall. You must buy a ticket before you go in.

B


The Romans enjoyed watching sport. This is a stadium (3) for Roman horse races (4). You can watch races there today.

D


مدخل (1)
قوس/قنطرة (2)
استاد (3)
سباقات (4)
مسارح (5)
معبد (6)
تل (7)
منظر (8)
تاريخى (9)
العالم (10)
يحمى (11)

Jerash has three Roman theatres (5). The biggest theatre is the South Theatre. Five thousand people can sit here.

A


This temple (6) is on a hill (7). There is an amazing view (8) of the city from here. I think it is important to learn about historic (9) places around the world (10). We must protect (11) them so that people can visit in the future, too.

C


Post-reading question:
- How many Roman theatres are there in Jerash?

Lesson 2

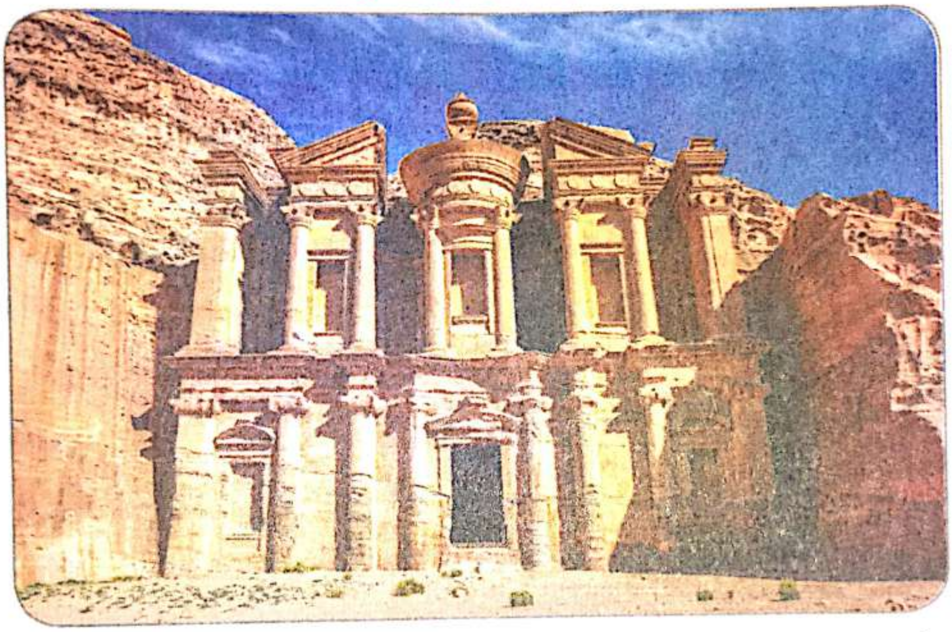
Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- What do you know about Jordan's big cities?

3. *Complete the review with words or a number from Exercises 1 and 2.*

WB page 96

My trip to Petra



(1) تاريخي
(2) منظر
(3) رائع
(4) مرشد
(5) يوصي بـ

I love historic[1] places like Petra in Jordan. It dates to around 300 BCE, so it is more than two thousand years old! You must buy a ticket to visit, but when you are inside, you can walk for a long way through the old city and theview[2] from some of the higher places are awesome[3], but you must be careful! Our guide[4] explained how old the temples are: they are really interesting. I really enjoyed our day there and recommend[5] a visit!

Post-reading question: - Can you name two big cities in Jordan?

Values

1. What can we learn from historic places?
2. Why is it important to learn about the history of other countries?
3. How should you behave when you visit historic places in other countries?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The trip was .... It was amazing.
   a) scary b) pleased c) awesome d) boring
2. We call something is .... when it is very old.
   a) new b) modern c) patient d) ancient
3. People build .... to pray in.
   a) statues b) ruins c) castles d) mosques
4. The museum is full of .... and many other historic objects.
   a) theatres b) statues c) stadiums d) castles
5. We are proud of our .... handball team. They won the cup.
   a) world b) modern c) ancient d) national
6. In the past, people built .... to watch their favourite sports.
   a) museums b) mosques c) stadiums d) theatres
7. We bought a new house with a large ....
   a) entrance b) wall c) ruin d) castle
8. Children must learn how to .... politely all the time.
   a) treat b) behave c) do d) make
9. When I look out of my bedroom window, I have a beautiful ....
   a) location b) sight c) view d) review
10. They didn't complete this building at all. These .... are thousands of years old.
    a) ruins b) arches c) entrances d) castles
11. This old castle .... to the Romans times.
    a) gets b) dates c) goes d) jumps
12. When you travel to a historic place, you should .... a guide.
    a) make b) get c) teach d) buy
13. Many people are interested .... watching football matches.
    a) in b) at c) on d) onto
14. Students usually bring .... lunch with them on a trip.
    a) bucket b) packet c) baked d) packed
15. This book is very interesting. I .... it to you.
    a) recommend b) advise c) tell d) say

Language

must/ mustn't

Subject + must + inf.	Subject + mustn't + inf.
We use (must) to talk about necessity and obligation. نستخدم (must + inf.) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الإلزام (ما يجب علينا فعله). - They must **arrive** on time. - You must **listen** to the teacher. - You must **study** hard.	**We use (mustn't) to say that it is important not to do something.** نستخدم (mustn't + inf.) بمعنى (لا يجب أن) للتعبير عن شيء من المهم ألا نفعله. - You mustn't **be** late. - In a museum, you mustn't **touch** the objects. - You mustn't **run** inside the building.

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. We must working hard to pass our exams. (................)
2. People must smoke in hospitals. (................)

Question السؤال

Must + sub. + inf.?

- Must we put rubbish in the bin?
  - Yes, you must.
  - No, you mustn't.
- Must the boys wear the school uniform?
  - Yes, they must.
  - No, they mustn't.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. At school, you .... listen to your teacher.
   a) have b) must c) mustn't d) has to
2. You .... be home on time. Don't be late.
   a) must b) mustn't
   c) shouldn't d) don't have to
3. You .... turn the music up too loud; you will harm our ears.
   a) doesn't have to b) have to
   c) has to d) mustn't
4. You .... do the housework. Our mother is ill.
   a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) have
5. This was a nice evening. We must .... again.
   a) meet b) meeting c) met d) to meet
6. You .... brush your teeth three times a day. It's good for your teeth.
   a) have to b) don't have to
   c) mustn't d) must
7. You .... forget to do your homework regularly.
   a) must to b) must c) mustn't to d) mustn't
8. You .... be kind to your friends.
   a) mustn't b) must c) must never d) shouldn't
9. It's late. You .... never make so much noise.
   a) mustn't b) must c) shouldn't d) don't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You <u>mustn't</u> study hard if you want to pass your exams. (.....................)
2. You mustn't <u>using</u> a mobile phone in class. (.....................)
3. You mustn't <u>to forget</u> your bag and books. (.....................)
4. Students and teachers must <u>are</u> polite to each other. (.....................)

Lessons 1&2 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Dad : Why are you so sad, Jane?

Jane : I had a problem at school today because I took my cat to class.

Dad : But you (1).. take animals to school!

Jane : (2).., Dad?

Dad : Because it's a rule.

Jane : But there are too many rules at school. I (3).. eat and I mustn't shout in class!

Dad : That's right. And there are other things you must do.

Jane : Yes! We must (4).. our uniform and we must do our homework.

Dad : And you must sleep early or you'll be tired tomorrow morning.

Jane : OK, Dad. I must (5).. to bed now!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10

1. We must buy .... before we go into the theatre.
   a) guides b) tickets c) papers d) presents
2. I'm not usually interested .... history.
   a) to b) with c) in d) on
3. My teacher always .... GEM Book to use.
   a) agrees b) recommends c) advises d) pays
4. There are many valuable .... in museums.
   a) objects b) subjects c) adjectives d) adverbs
5. My uncle won the last horse ....
   a) ride b) match c) game d) race
6. We will watch the final match at the ....
   a) stadium b) museum c) theatre d) castle
7. People go to mosques to ....
   a) cook b) jump c) pray d) play

8. You .... put the rubbish in the bin.
   a) must   b) mustn't
   c) has to   d) don't have to
9. I .... get up early tomorrow. The train leaves at six a.m.
   a) must   b) shouldn't   c) mustn't   d) don't have to
10. This is a valuable book. You .... keep it and mustn't lose it.
   a) mustn't   b) haven't   c) shouldn't   d) must

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. It's a "No Parking" area. You must park here. (................)
2. You must walk on the grass here, there's a sign over there. (................)
3. In a hospital, you must to be quiet. (................)
4. Students mustn't using their mobile phones during the lessons. (................)

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

6

"The Pyramids"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

25

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
.... / 30			.... / 25			.... / 55		
(1-15)	(16-24)	(25-30)	(1-12)	(13-20)	(21-25)	(1-25)	(26-45)	(46-55)

Notes

....

....

....

....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 38-40 WB pages 97 & 98

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3

bowl	سلطانية	necklace	عقد/ قلادة	tool	أداة
coin	عملة معدنية	papyrus	ورق/نبات البردى	vase	فازة/زهرية
figure	شكل (بشرى)	pot	إناء/وعاء	web page	صفحة ويب
magazine	مجلة	ring	خاتم		
mask	قناع	the Museum of Islamic Art	متحف الفن الإسلامى		

Lesson 4

chemical	مادة كيميائية	ingredients	مكونات/مقادير	popular	محبوب/شعبى
clay	طين صلصال	insect	حشرة	senet	السينيت (لعبة تشبه الشطرنج)
design	تصميم	mix (ed)	يخلط	square	مربع

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3

adult	بالغ	except	ما عدا	price	ثمن/سعر
box	صندوق	model	نموذج	runner	عدّاء/متسابق جرى
customer	زبون	neck	رقبة	station	محطة
equipment	معدات	opening times	مواعيد العمل	ticket office	مكتب التذاكر

Lesson 4

ant	نملة	foot/feet	قدم/أقدام	the River Nile	نهر النيل
bee	نحلة	mosquitos	ناموس/بعوض	wood	خشب

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 4

look ▶ good	يبدو جيدًا	make ▶ food	يعد طعامًا
		make ▶ bread	يعد خبزًا

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 4

come from يأتي من	keep away يُبعِد	protect from يحمي من
decide to + inf. يقرر أن	look around يتجول حول	take off يخلع ملابسه/حذاءه
go into يدخل	paint around يدهن حول	with باستخدام

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 3			
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
hold	يمسك/يحفظ	held	held
ring	يرن	rang	rung
Lesson 4			
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 3		
coins	عملات معدنية	pieces of money made of metal
figure	شكل (بشرى)	a model of a person
mask	قناع	something people wear to cover or protect their face
necklace	عقد/قلادة	jewellery you wear around your neck
tool	أداة	a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things
vase	زهرية	a pot used for holding flowers

Language Notes

use + الشيء + (to + inf.) / for + v-ing/n.) يستخدم ... لـ

- We use pens to write/for writing.

Write it right

How to write about homes today
كيفية الكتابة عن منازل اليوم

- Our homes today are more (صفة) than they were before.
- I live in a/an .... (صفة) house.
- It's (موقعه).
- There are many objects which we use in the house.
- We use (اسم الشيء المُستخدم).
- We use it to (السبب).
- Next to (الشيء), there is (شيء آخر).
- I like my house a lot.

Writing tips

Before writing, you need to think of ideas relevant to the topic.

- قبل البدء فى الكتابة، يجب أن تبحث عن أفكار مرتبطة بالموضوع.

From : rawda@student.com
To : fatma@student.com
Subject : My home

Hi Fatma,

How are you? I want to tell you about my home. Our homes today are more modern than they were before, and they will get smarter. I live in a quite small but beautiful house. My home is near the river, so fresh and cool air comes to our home. There are many important objects which we use in our house. In the centre of my bedroom there is a large bed. Next to the bed is a table with a vase of flowers. There is a large wardrobe to the left of my bed with a computer table, cupboards and shelves built into it. The kitchen is the place where there are many objects. A mixer is used for mixing food. The mixer is made of metal and plastic. A kettle is a metal container which is used for boiling water. I really love my home.

Write soon.
Rawda

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Tarek telling him about your house. Your name is Malek.

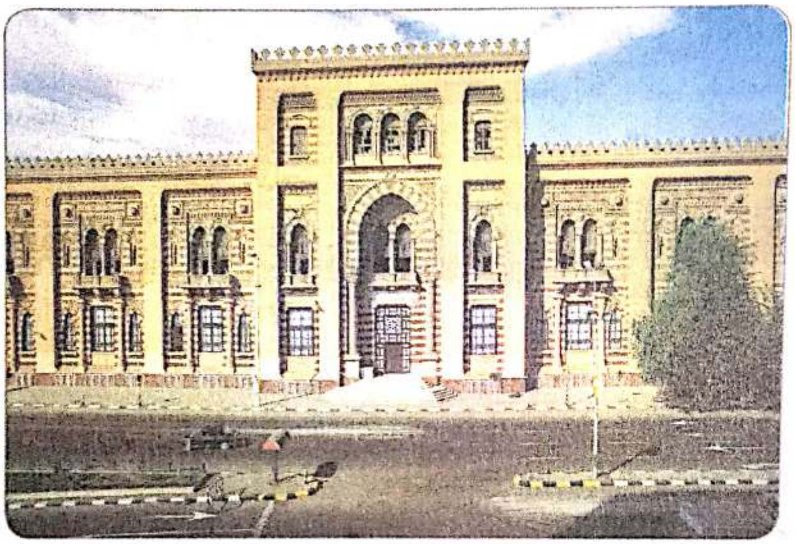
Lesson 3

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Have you visited any museums before? When? Describe it.

3. Listen to Ahmed talk about a museum visit. What did he leave at the museum? *SB page 39*



Ahmed: Last Tuesday, I went to the Museum of Islamic Art[1] with my family. While we were waiting to go into the museum[2], I saw my friend Amir with his mum and dad! As my parents were buying the tickets, Amir and I decided what we wanted to see first.

We were looking around the museum when Amir and I found some tall doors with amazing designs[3] on them. They were very interesting, so I wanted a photo. I put my bag on the floor while I was taking the photo.

We stayed in the museum for two hours before we went home. As we were travelling home, Amir phoned me. He had my bag – I left it in the museum! We got home an hour later. Amir arrived while I was taking off my shoes! He gave me my bag.

(1) متحف الفن الإسلامى

(2) متحف

(3) تصميمات

Post-listening question:

- What was Ahmed doing when he left the bag?

Lesson 3

Listening and Speaking

Pre-listening question:

- Do you like visiting historic places? Why?

2. Put the dialogue in the correct order. *WB page 97*



Ticket office : Good morning, City Museum. How can I help you?

Customer : Good morning. Can you tell me what times the museum is open?

Ticket office : Certainly. We open from 9:30 to 6:30 every day except Friday. We close then.

Customer : I'd like to know how much a ticket for two adults and one child is, please.

Ticket office : Of course. Adults are 150 pounds and children under 12 are 75 pounds.

Customer : Can I buy the tickets at the museum?

Ticket office : Yes, or you can buy them online.

Customer : Thank you for your help. Goodbye.

Post-listening question:

- How much are the tickets?

Lesson 4

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Why do we use mirrors?

1. Read about objects in Ancient Egypt. Why did people draw squares on the floor?

SB page 40

Objects from Egypt's past

Objects [1] from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!

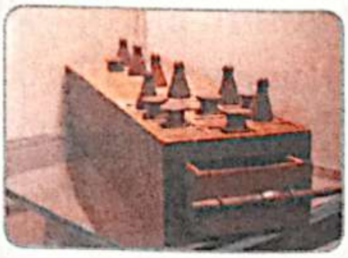


In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors [2] to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects [3]. The mirrors were metal and had interesting designs [4]. Where do you have mirrors in your home?



(1) أشياء
(2) مرايا
(3) حشرات
(4) تصميمات
(5) أوانٍ
(6) سلطانية
(7) طين الصلصال
(8) يخلط
(9) مقادير/مكونات
(10) السينيت (لعبة تشبه الشطرنج)
(11) شعبى/مشهور

The Ancient Egyptians used pots [5] and bowls [6] for making food such as bread. These objects were made of clay [7], which came from the River Nile. While some people were mixing [8] ingredients [9] for bread in bowls, other people got into the bowl and used their feet to mix the ingredients! How do we make bread today?



The Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet [10]. Senet boxes have 30 squares. This box is made of wood and is about 3,500 years old. Some people did not have senet boxes, but they still played the game. They drew the squares on the floor. What games are popular [11] in Egypt today?

Post-reading question: - What did the Ancient Egyptians like playing?

Lesson 4

Listening Text

3. *Listen and match these modern objects a–d to the descriptions 1–4.*

WB page 98

Narrator 1

Speaker: These are made of wood. People use them to play a game.

Narrator 2

Speaker: These are usually made of plastic. They help to protect your eyes from the sun.

Narrator 3

Speaker: These are made of glass or wood. They help to keep away insects.

Narrator 4

Speaker: This is made of metal and plastic. People use it to mix ingredients when they are cooking.

1



2



3



4



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ancient Egyptians made pots and bowls of .... from the Nile.
   a) metal b) wool c) clay d) water
2. Ancient Egyptians used .... for writing.
   a) papyrus b) wood c) wool d) paper
3. A .... is a piece of metal used as money.
   a) pot b) bowl c) can d) coin
4. Some boys wore .... on their faces to frighten girls.
   a) shorts b) skirts
   c) masks d) shirts
5. My grandmother gave me a beautiful .... on my birthday which I can wear a round my neck.
   a) ring b) watch
   c) jumper d) necklace
6. My mother wears two .... on her fingers. They are expensive.
   a) rings b) watches c) scarfs d) necklaces
7. Bees and ants are small ....
   a) animals b) birds c) insects d) turtles
8. People wear sunglasses to .... their eyes from the sun.
   a) affect b) protect
   c) infect d) give
9. My father's mobile phone .... him a lot of money. It's very expensive.
   a) cost b) paid
   c) bought d) sold
10. There is a .... of flowers on the table next to my bed.
    a) bottle b) vase c) bag d) glass
11. The shop is very crowded today. There are many ....
    a) waiters b) customers
    c) sellers d) objects
12. We go to school every day .... holidays.
    a) accept b) expect
    c) except d) aspect

Remember

Language

1 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- It is used to talk about a finished action in the past.

- يعبر عن شىء حدث فى الماضى وانتهى.

- I went to school late **last Monday.**

Form التكوين

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل

- I played football a week ago.
- She wrote a letter yesterday.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

(yesterday - last ...... - ...... ago - in the past - one day - once)

Negative النفى

Subject ▸ didn't + inf.

- بوضع (didn't) بين الفاعل والمصدر.

- I studied my lessons. → (نفى) I didn't study my lessons.
- She wrote a letter. → (نفى) She didn't write a letter.

Question السؤال

Did ▸ subject + inf.?

- بوضع (Did) قبل الفاعل ثم المصدر.

- Did you study your lessons? - Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

- وعند السؤال بكلمة استفهام توضع قبل (did).

كلمة الاستفهام ▸ did + subject + inf. ......?

- When did you study your lessons? - I studied my lessons yesterday.

2 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

EX.: Ali was playing football all day yesterday.

Usage الاستخدام



- **We use the past continuous to talk about events that were in progress at a certain time during the past.**

- يعبر عن شيء كان مستمرًا فى وقت محدد فى الماضى.

- Dina and Hossam were playing tennis at 10:30 yesterday.

Form التكوين

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد → was → verb + ing

You / We / They / اسم جمع → were → verb + ing

- He was **reading** a book.
- Aya was **cooking** dinner.
- They were **swimming.**
- Ali and Mai were **eating.**

Negative النفى

- بوضع (not) بعـد (was - were).

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد → was not (wasn't) → verb + ing

You / We / They / اسم جمع → were not (weren't) → verb + ing

- I was not (wasn't) playing football.
- They were not (weren't) swimming.

Question السؤال

١- فى حالة السؤال بمعنى (هل) نستخدم:

Was	▶ I/ he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد	v. + ing?
Were	▶ they/ we/ you/ اسم جمع	

- Were you watching TV? - Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't.

٢- فى حالة السؤال بكلمة استفهام: يتم وضعها قبل (was/ were).

كلمة الاستفهام	was	▶ I/ he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد	v. + ing?
	were	▶ you/ we/ they/ اسم جمع	

- When were you playing football?
  - I was playing football all day yesterday.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

- لاحظ استخدام (while/ as/ when) مع الماضى المستمر والماضى البسيط.

While/As بينما - أثناء / When عندما

- نستخدم (while/ as/ when) للتعبير عن: حدث كان مستمرًا فى الماضى (الماضى المستمر) حين قطعه حدث آخر (الماضى البسيط).

1

While/As/ When	past continuous,	past simple

- As/When we were walking into the museum, we saw some old statues.
- While I was reading my book, the phone rang.

2

Past simple	while/as	past continuous

- Grandfather arrived while Mum was cooking.
- I put my bag on the floor as I was taking a photo.

3

Past continuous	when	past simple

- Mum was cooking when grandfather arrived.

What + (was - were) + فاعل + doing when + past simple?

- What was Mum doing when grandfather arrived?
  - She was cooking.
- What were you doing when I phoned you?
  - I was doing my homework.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The telephone rang while Tamer .... doing his homework.
   a) was b) is c) were d) are
2. Sanaa heard the noise .... she was watching a film.
   a) if b) as c) so d) because
3. We were playing tennis when Tamer .... his ankle.
   a) hurting b) hurt c) was hurting d) is hurting
4. Someone opened the door while I ....
   a) was sleeping b) was slept
   c) sleeping d) slept
5. While I was looking out of the window, it .... to rain.
   a) started b) was started
   c) was starting d) starting
6. As I .... for tomorrow's game, I fell down and hurt my leg.
   a) practise b) practising
   c) practised d) was practising
7. When I was younger, I .... pizza almost every day.
   a) eaten b) eat
   c) ate d) was eating
8. The boys didn't play because it ....
   a) rained b) was raining
   c) rains d) raining
9. What .... at 10 pm last night?
   a) were they doing b) did they do
   c) did they use to do d) are they doing

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They <u>have</u> tea when the doorbell rang. (......................)
2. When he <u>arrives</u>, we were having dinner. (......................)
3. I was sweeping the floor <u>while</u> I heard a noise. (......................)
4. They <u>forget</u> their books yesterday. (......................)

Speaking

Asking for information on the phone

طلب معلومات عبر الهاتف

How can I help you? كيف يمكنني مساعدتك؟

I'd like to know what time the museum is open.
أود معرفة موعد فتح المتحف.

Hello, can you tell me if the museum is open on Fridays?
هل يمكنك أن تخبرني إن كان المتحف مفتوحًا أيام الجمعة؟

Certainly./Of course. It's open daily.
بالتأكيد/نعم بالطبع. إنه مفتوح يوميًا.

Can I buy the tickets online? هل يمكنني شراء التذاكر عبر الإنترنت؟

Sure./Of course. - بالتأكيد/ نعم بالطبع.

Thank you for your help. شكرا لك على المساعدة.

You're welcome. على الرحب والسعة.

Type a message

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

Ticket office : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you?

Customer : Good morning. (1).. you tell me your working hours?

Ticket office : (2).. . We're open daily from 9:30 to 6:30.

Customer : (3).. like to know how much the tickets are?

Ticket office : Of course. Adults are 150 pounds and children under 12 are 75 pounds.

Customer : Can I buy the tickets at the museum?

Ticket office : Yes, or you can buy them online.

Customer : I'd (4).. to know if I could bring my camera with me.

Ticket office : Of course. But you mustn't take photos inside the museum.

Customer : (5).. you for your help. Goodbye.

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

1. Who first played this game?
   a) The Romans. b) The English.
   c) The Indians. d) The ancient Egyptians.
2. How old is this game?
   a) 3500. b) 350. c) 3050. d) 3005.
3. How many squares does this game have?
   a) 13. b) 31. c) 30. d) 300.
4. **A:** What did people who didn't have these boxes do?
   B: They drew squares on the ....
   a) wall b) hill
   c) roof d) floor

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. A .... is a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things.
   a) vase b) tap c) pot d) tool
2. A .... is a model of a person.
   a) bowl b) coin c) figure d) castle
3. In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to .... around their eyes.
   a) mend b) fix c) paint d) mix
4. People used bowls to .... ingredients.
   a) mix b) fix c) repair d) mend
5. My mother tries to .... bread at home.
   a) make b) do c) mix d) fix
6. This chemical helps to keep .... bad insects.
   a) away b) by c) at d) for
7. Some people drew squares on the floor to .... a game.
   a) do b) play c) make d) advise

8. It started to rain while they .... home.
   a) walking b) were walking c) walked d) walk
9. My father was watching TV when the phone ....
   a) ring b) rung c) rang d) was ringing
10. It began to snow .... we were playing football.
   a) as b) because
   c) for d) before

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. He saw the accident when he was <u>drive</u> home from work. (................)
2. At four p.m. yesterday, I <u>did</u> my homework. (................)
3. I was walking through the park when I <u>meet</u> Adel. (................)
4. While I was texting my friends, the school bus <u>arrives</u>. (................)

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Asmaa to tell her about objects in your house. Your name is Kady.

6

....
....
....
....
....

24

....
....
....

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
........../30			........../24			........../54		
(1-15)	(16-24)	(25-30)	(1-12)	(13-20)	(21-24)	(1-25)	(26-45)	(46-54)

Notes

....
....
....
....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 41 & 42 WB pages 99 & 100

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 5

company	شركة	debate	مناقشة/مناظرة	maybe	ربما
historic	تاريخى	environment	البيئة	tourism	السياحة
damage (d)	يدمر/يضر/يتلف	local people	السكان المحليون	tourist	سائح

Lesson 6

area	منطقة	pharaoh	فرعون	special	خاص/مميز
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	report	تقرير	stone circles	الدوائر الحجرية
follow (ed)	يتبع	ruler	حاكم	war	حرب

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 5

behave well	يتصرف جيدًا	injure (d)	يصيب/يؤذى/يؤلم	plan	خطة
busy	مشغول/مزدحم	lake	بحيرة	such as	مثل
hotel	فندق	oil	زيت/بترول	the United Arab Emirates	دولة الإمارات العربية المتحدة

Lesson 6

British	بريطانى	Pharaoh Thutmose III	الفرعون تحتمس الثالث	storm	عاصفة
enter (ed)	يدخل	ship	سفينة	weigh (ed)	يزن

Places أماكن

Britain بريطانيا	Gambia جامبيا	the River Gambia نهر جامبيا
Cleopatra's Needle مسلة كليوباترا	London لندن	the River Thames نهر التايمز
England إنجلترا	Senegal السنغال	the Stone Circles of Senegambia الدوائر الحجرية فى سينجامبيا

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 5

drop	▶ rubbish	يلقى بالقمامة
make	▶ pollution	يسبِّب تلوثًا

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 5

at the moment فى هذه اللحظة	good for مفيد لـ	in other ways بطرق أخرى

Lesson 6

at the beginning of فى بداية	happen to يحدث لـ	

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 5		
bring يُحضر/يجلب	brought	brought
Lesson 6		
sink يغوص/يغرق	sank	sunk

Write it right

How to write about Egyptian objects in other countries

كيفية الكتابة عن قطع أثرية مصرية بدولة أخرى

- What's the Egyptian object?
- Where is it?
- Who discovered it?
- When was it moved to another country?
- Why is it important?

Writing tips

You can join sentences together using connectives such as:

يمكنك الربط بين الجمل باستخدام تلك الروابط:

and, then, however, moreover, when, while ....

Example

An Egyptian object in another country

The Rosetta Stone is in the British Museum in London. It was found on July 19, 1799, a French soldier discovered a stone with ancient writing near the town of Rosetta (Rashid) in the Nile Delta. The Rosetta Stone is one of the most important objects in the British Museum as it holds the key to understanding Egyptian hieroglyphs. After many years of studying the Rosetta Stone and other examples of ancient Egyptian writing, Jean-François Champollion could read hieroglyphs in 1822. The British soldiers took the stone to the British Museum in 1801. Egypt tries hard to take it back.

Check Point:

Write a paragraph about "A historic object":

"A historic object"

....

....

....

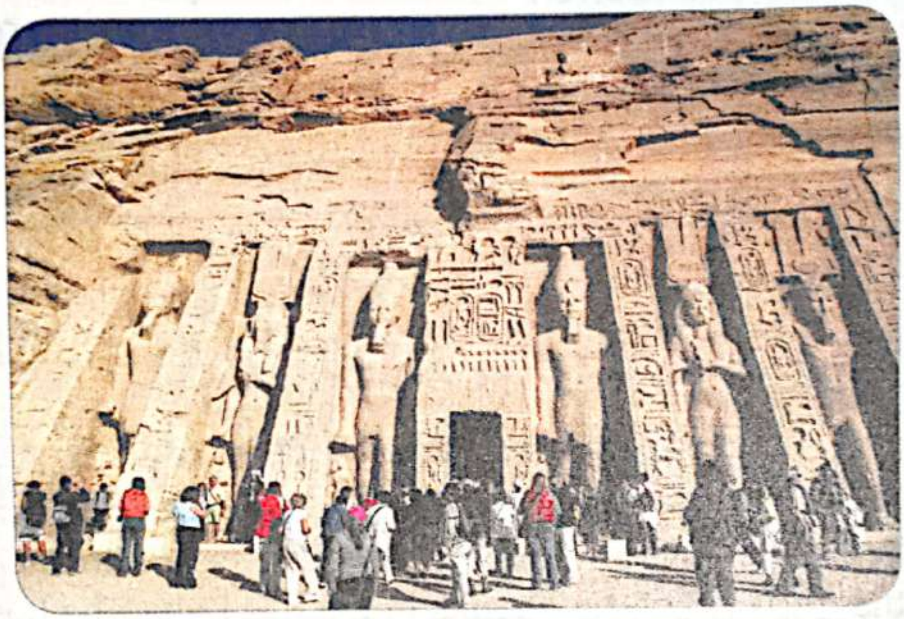
....

....

Lesson 5 — Listening Text

Pre-listening question:
- Why do you think tourism is important?

2. Listen again and complete the conversation. *SB page 41*



Amira : What do you think, Hana? Is tourism[1] good for historic[2] places?

Hana : Yes, I think it is. Tourists bring money to an area[3]. This helps the local people[4].

Amira : I don't think so. A lot of the money goes to big companies, not local people.

Hana : Maybe, but some holiday companies help the environment[5] and the local people.

Amira : I don't agree that tourism helps the environment. Tourists drop rubbish[6] and damage[7] places in other ways, like sitting on ancient ruins.

Hana : I see what you mean, but most tourists behave[8] well. They know it's important to protect historic places.

(1) السياحة
(2) تاريخي
(3) منطقة
(4) السكان المحليون
(5) البيئة
(6) القمامة
(7) يدمر/يتلف
(8) يتصرف

Post-listening question:
- Why is it important to protect historic places?

Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Where do you stay when you travel to another country?

4. Listen to check your answers, then role-play the conversation.

WB page 99



Fady : Do you think this plan for a new hotel is a good idea, Baher?

Baher : I don't think so. It only has jobs for people in the city.

Fady : I don't agree. More tourists in the area can help the local people.

Baher : Maybe, but what about the water? Taking water from the lake will damage the environment.

Fady : I see what you mean. It's important to protect the environment.

Post-listening question:

- Do you agree with Baher? Why?

Life Skills

It is important to protect all parts of the environment.

(1) How can we help to protect historic places?

(2) How can we protect the environment when we travel?

(3) What can big companies do to protect the environment?



....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 5

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- Why is it important to build new hotels?

2. Read the email and write the missing sentences a-c in the right places.

WB page 99



While we were visiting the beach last month, we decided it was a great place to build a new hotel. *The hotel will give work to a lot of people.* We are a big company, so we can ask people from our city hotels to work here in the summer. *We can use the water from the lake for the new hotel.* There is not much water while we were driving to the area, we saw a big lake. *This is the time when the hotel will be busy.*

Let me know what you think of our plan.

Post-reading question:

- Are you with or against building more hotels on the beach? Why?

Lesson 6

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about the stone circles?

1. Read the report and look at the photos. Where are the stone circles and what do you think they can tell us? *SB page 42*

Report on the stone circles of Senegambia

Where are the stone circles?

- There are more than 1,000 Stone Circles[1] of Senegambia. They follow the River Gambia for 350 kilometres across two countries: Senegal and Gambia.



Stone circles at Sine Ngayene, Senegal

Why are the stone circles important?

- The stone circles are very important to the history of Senegal and Gambia. They tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.

(1) الدوائر الحجرية

(2) يتلف/يضر

(3) السياحة

(4) السكان المحليون

(5) يحمى

How old are the stone circles?

- The oldest stone circles are around 2,300 years old and the youngest are around 500 years old. This means that people were building the circles for more than 1,800 years.

Can tourists visit them?

- Tourisits can visit them, but they must not damage[2] them. Money from tourism[3] helps to pay for local people[4] to look after the stones. It is important to protect[5] the stones.



Stone circles at Wassu, Gambia

Post-reading question:

- Why are the stone circles important?

Lesson 6

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- Where's the Cleopatra's Needle?

1. Read the report and match the parts 1-5 with the headings a-e. *WB page 100*

Report on Cleopatra's Needle

Where is Cleopatra's Needle?

Cleopatra's Needle[1] is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames in London, England.

How old is it?

The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for Pharaoh Thutmose III and it is about 3,500 years old.

Why is it in this country?

The ruler of Egypt, Muhammad Ali, gave it to Britain in 1819 after the British won a war[2].

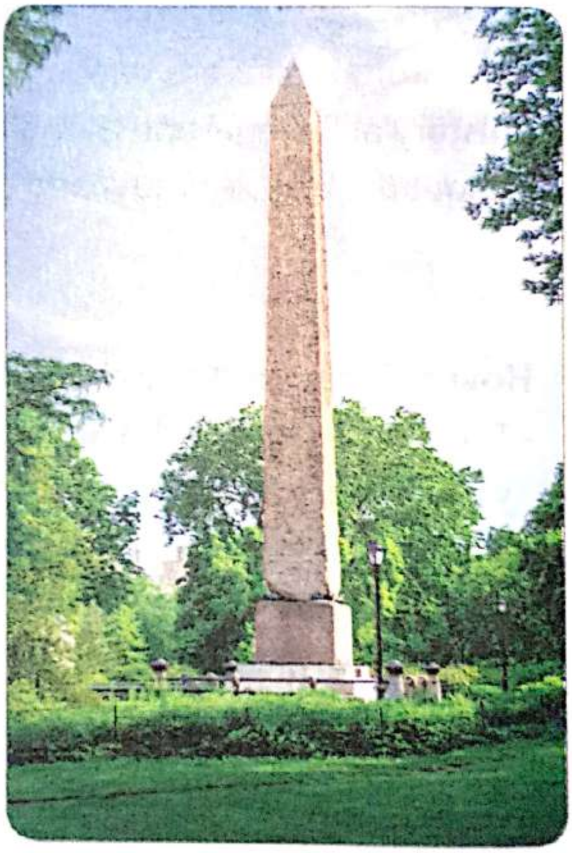
How big is it?

The stone is more than 20 metres high and weighs[3] about 200,000 kilograms.

When and how did it get to this country?

The British made a special ship for the stone in 1877. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank in a storm[4]. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.

(1) مسلة كليوباترا
(2) الحرب
(3) يزن
(4) عاصفة



Post-reading question:

- Who gave Cleopatra's Needle to England?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There was a .... in our class about how we help the environment.
   a) debate b) date
   c) carpet d) lamp
2. .... is important for Egypt because it brings a lot of money and jobs.
   a) Infection b) Illness
   c) Pollution d) Tourism
3. We should protect our .... places because they are very important.
   a) history b) historian
   c) geography d) historic
4. Some tourists are careless because they .... rubbish in historic places.
   a) drop b) make
   c) lend d) mix
5. Some projects in the area help .... people to find jobs easily.
   a) strange b) local
   c) historic d) natural
6. Some people think that tourists can .... important places.
   a) attack b) attract
   c) damage d) debate
7. A .... is a period of 100 years.
   a) month b) week
   c) decade d) century
8. I want to know what happened .... Hazem last night.
   a) to b) in
   c) under d) at
9. My brother works in a big .... that organises holidays.
   a) fort b) castle
   c) palace d) company
10. Muhammad Ali was the .... of Egypt in the past. He was the most important person.
    a) ruler b) roller
    c) baker d) waiter

Speaking

Asking for and giving opinions

السؤال عن وإبداء الرأى

What do you think, Abbas? Is tourism good for historic places?
ما رأيك يا عباس؟ هل السياحة مفيدة للأماكن التاريخية؟

I don't think so. Tourists often travel by car. This makes more pollution.
لا أعتقد ذلك. يسافر السائحون غالبًا بالسيارة، وهذا يؤدى إلى زيادة التلوث.

Do you think it's important to protect historic places?
هل تعتقد انه من المهم حماية الأماكن الأثرية؟

Yes. I think so.
نعم. أعتقد ذلك.

Do you agree that big companies help protect the environment?
هل تتفق أن كبرى الشركات تساعد فى حماية البيئة؟

Maybe.
ربما.

I think that tourists damage places in other ways.
أعتقد أن السائحين يقومون بعمل ضَرر للأماكن بطرق مختلفة.

I don't agree with you.
لا أتفق معك فى ذلك.

I think most tourists behave well.
أعتقد أن معظم السائحين يتصرفون جيدًا.

I see what you mean.
أفهم ما تعنيه.

Type a message

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue: SB

Amira : What do you think, Hana? Is tourism good for historic places?

Hana : Yes, I (1).. it is.

Amira : Why do you think that?

Hana : Because tourists bring money to an area. This helps the local people.

Amira : I (2).. think so.

Hana : Why not?

Amira : As a lot of money goes to big companies, not (3).. people.

Hana : Maybe, but some holiday companies help the environment and the local people.

Amira : I (4).. agree. Tourists drop rubbish and damage places.

Hana : I see what you (5).., but most tourists behave well.

Lessons 5 & 6

General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue: (5)

Alaa : Hello, Fady!

Fady : Hello, Alaa!

Alaa : What do you (1).., Fady? Are tablet computers useful?

Fady : Yes, I (2)... they're more useful than other computers.

Alaa : I don't (3)... with you. They're too small. You can't read websites clearly.

Fady : I see what you (4)...! But websites are easy to read on tablets.

Alaa : Do you have a tablet computer at home?

Fady : Of course. What about you, will you buy one?

Alaa : (5).. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (10)

1. I read an interesting .... about tourism in a magazine.
   a) debate b) report c) paper d) plan
2. Tourism is good .... our country.
   a) at b) to c) with d) for
3. Tourists stay in .... while they are in other countries.
   a) palaces b) museums c) castles d) hotels
4. Children should .... their father's advice.
   a) sell b) follow c) borrow d) spend
5. There are .... schools for deaf people who cannot hear.
   a) special b) touristic c) crowded d) ugly
6. Tourists must .... well when they visit other countries.
   a) apply b) stay c) sleep d) behave
7. .... are damaging many countries around the world.
   a) Wars b) Weddings c) Birthdays d) Parties

8. You .... listen to your teacher.
   a) can't b) mustn't c) must d) should never
9. While she ...., the doorbell rang.
   a) cooking b) cooks c) cooked d) was cooking
10. As I .... to school, I saw Nabil.
   a) was walking b) walked c) walking d) walk

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. His father called him while he prepared breakfast. (........................)
2. My father was driving when a policeman was stopping him. (........................)
3. We mustn't damaging historic places. (........................)
4. We must smoke in hospitals. (........................)

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"An ancient Egyptian object"

6

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

25

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
.... / 30			.... / 25			.... / 55		
(1-15)	(16-24)	(25-30)	(1-12)	(13-20)	(21-25)	(1-25)	(26-45)	(46-55)

Notes

....
....
....
....

Video Script

These people are visiting the ancient site of Karnak, near Luxor. People were also visiting Karnak thousands of years ago.

There are lots of different ruins at Karnak. It is one of the most important historic places in the world.

You can see many awesome things, such as ancient statues and templles.

This is an obelisk[1]. This obelisk is nearly thirty metres tall and it has hieroglyphics[2] on it.

There is even a lake at Karnak called the Sacred Lake[3]. Important people came here to wash themselves.

This is the amazing Temple of Amun[4]. It was one of the first buildings to be built at Karnak around four thousand years ago. It has huge columns[5].

In the past, people came to Karnak from all over Egypt. More than two thousand people could be in the Temple of Amun at the same time.

Today, people visit Karnak from all over the world. They must walk past lots of statues of Sphinx[6] when they enter the Temple of Amun.

Visitors mustn't enter some parts of Karnak. This is because they are very old and protected. These are the ruins of the Temple of Montu[7]. It is more than three thousand years old.

We know a lot about the history of the world because of historic places like Karnak.

0:00

(1) مسلة

(2) الهيروغليفية

(3) البحيرة المقدسة

(4) معبد آمون

(5) أعمدة

(6) أبو الهول

(7) معبد مونتو

Unit 4 Review

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

amazing	مذهل	ingredients	مكونات/مقادير	report	تقرير
ancient	أثرى/قديم جدًا	insect	حشرة	review	مقالة نقدية
arch	قوس/ قنطرة	interested in	مهتم بـ	ring	خاتم
awesome	رهيب/رائع	interesting	شيق	Roman	رومان
behave (d)	يتصرف	keep away	يبعد	ruins	أطلال
bowl	سلطانية	local people	السكان المحليون	ruler	حاكم
castle	قلعة	magazine	مجلة	senet	السينيت (لعبة تشبه الشطرنج)
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	make pollution	يسبّب تلوثًا	special	خاص /مميز
chemical	مادة كيميائية	mask	قناع	square	مربع
clay	طين صلصال	mix (ed)	يخلط	stadium	استاد
coin	عملة معدنية	mosque	مسجد	statue	تمثال
company	شركة	museum	متحف	stone circles	الدوائر الحجرية
damage (d)	يدمر/يضر/يتلف	national	قومى/وطنى	temple	معبد
date to	يرجع تاريخه إلى	necklace	عقد/ قلادة	theatre	مسرح
debate	مناقشة/مناظرة	papyrus	ورق/نبات البردى	time	عصر/عهد
design	تصميم	pharaoh	فرعون	tool	أداة
drop rubbish	يلقى بالقمامة	popular	محبوب/شعبى	tourism	السياحة
entrance (to)	مدخل (لـ)	pot	إناء/وعاء	tourist	سائح
environment	البيئة	pray (ed)	يصلى	vase	فازة/زهرية
figure	شكل (بشرى)	protect from	يحمى من	view of	منظر لـ
follow (ed)	يتبع	race	سباق	war	حرب
historic	تاريخى	recommend (ed)	يرشح/يوصى بـ	web page	صفحة ويب

Language

1 Must / Mustn't

Subject + must/ mustn't + inf.

- You must drop litter in the bin.
- You mustn't damage the historic places.

2 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل

- Aya bought a new dress yesterday.

3 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Subject + was/ were + v + ing.

- Aya and Ola were doing their homework all night.

While/As/When + past continuous, past simple

- While/ As/ When mum was cooking, grandfather arrived.

When + past simple + past continuous

- When the game started, it was raining.

Speaking

Asking for information on the phone

- How can I help you?
  - I'd like to know what time the museum is open.
- Hello, can you tell me if the museum is open on Fridays?
  - Certainly./Of course. It's open daily.
- Can I buy the tickets online?
  - Sure./Of course.

Al-Azhar Corner

Based on Unit 4 أسئلة خاصة بأبنائنا طلبة الأزهر الشريف

1 Finish the following two mini-dialogues:

A) Samir : What mustn't you do at school?

Samira : ....

B) Sayed : ....?

Sandy : I think tourism is good for our country, Egypt.

2 Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. I'd like to know	a) circles are there?
2. While I was reading my book,	b) think so.
3. I understand	c) the phone was ringing.
4. I don't	d) the phone rang.
5. How many stone	e) what time you usually go to bed.
	f) what you mean.

Answers: 1. ( ) 2. ( ) 3. ( ) 4. ( ) 5. ( )

3 Write an email to your friend Peter about the Pyramids. Your name is Youssef.

....

....

....

....

....

....

Cumulative Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Where is the Rosetta Stone now?
   a) In London.
   b) In Alex.
   c) In Rashid.
   d) In Egypt.
2. When could Champollion read it?
   a) In 822.
   b) In 1822.
   c) In 1922.
   d) In 2020.
3. Where was it found? - In ....
   a) London.
   b) Alex.
   c) Rashid.
   d) the Museum.
4. How many years could they study it?
   a) Many years.
   b) Few years.
   c) One year.
   d) Two years.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

WB 5

Fady : Do you think this plan for the new hotel is a good idea, Baher?
Baher : I don't think (1).. .
Fady : Why?
Baher : It only has jobs for people in the city.
Fady : I don't (2).. .
Baher : Why don't you agree with me?
Fady : Because more tourists in the area can help the local people.
Baher : (3).., but what about the water? Taking water from the lake will damage the environment.
Fady : I see (4).. you mean. It's important to protect the environment.
Baher : I (5).. with you at this point.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

6

Egypt has a lot of ancient and modern places to visit. The Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Cairo. It took five years to build. It opened in 1961. It is 187 metres tall and stands next to the Nile on Gezira Island.

There is a restaurant at the top. It moves, so you can see all of the city below you. There are 24 windows on each floor of the building. If you want to walk to the top, there are 2.500 stairs.

At night, the colours on the tower change. It is a wonderful building!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where does the Cairo Tower stand?

   ....

2. How many windows are there on each floor?

   ....

3. What does the underlined word "It" refer to?

   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. There are .... stairs.

   a) 500 b) 2.500 c) 2000 d) 1000

5. The Cairo Tower is ....

   a) bad b) ugly c) beautiful d) small

6. Building the tower started in ....

   a) 1961 b) 1916 c) 1956 d) 1950

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. You can watch a sports match at a .... WB

   a) lab b) library c) museum d) stadium

2. A/An .... can be an entrance to another place. WB

   a) arch b) wall c) ruin d) castle

3. You can pray at a .... WB

   a) museum b) mosque c) stadium d) castle

4. You can see .... in a museum. WB

   a) castles b) prayers c) statues d) players

5. .... are not a complete building. WB

   a) Ruins b) Castles c) Statues d) Arches

6 .... is something that is concerning history. WB

a) Historic b) Amazing c) Interesting d) Awesome

7 A .... is a person who can show you round a place. WB

a) cook b) waiter c) tourist d) guide

8 What .... the boys doing at 4 p.m yesterday?

a) did b) are c) have d) were

9 As I was running, I .... a nice bird.

a) am seeing b) see c) saw d) sees

10 .... you hear the bell while you were cooking?

a) Did b) Were c) Do d) have

5 Read and correct the underlined words: 4

1 During an exam, you <u>must</u> copy from the other students. (.....................)

2 I <u>must</u> forget my wife's birthday, so I have to buy a card today. (.....................)

3 My dad fell off <u>when</u> he was painting. (.....................)

4 What were you doing when I <u>phone</u>? (.....................)

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"A historic place in Egypt"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

35

Unit 4

Research Projects

1. A historic place

Do a research on "A historic place".

Use these guiding points to help you:



- Mention details about the historic place./ Why do you think it is important to visit it?/ How can we save it for future generations?
- How old is it?/ Where is it?/ Must you buy a ticket there?/ Must you get a guide?
- Your advice to your friend to visit it.

2. Objects in your house

Do a research on "Objects in your house".

Use these guiding points to help you:



- What kind of objects that you use every day around the house? Why are they important? How did people manage to live without them in the past?/ How can you keep it working without damaging the rest of the house?
- What is it made of?/ What is it used for?/ How often do you use it?/ What do you think of it?

Research steps

1. A suitable title
2. An introduction
3. Main ideas and information
4. The results
5. Resources

ALADWAA OASIS

Look and write where these places are:



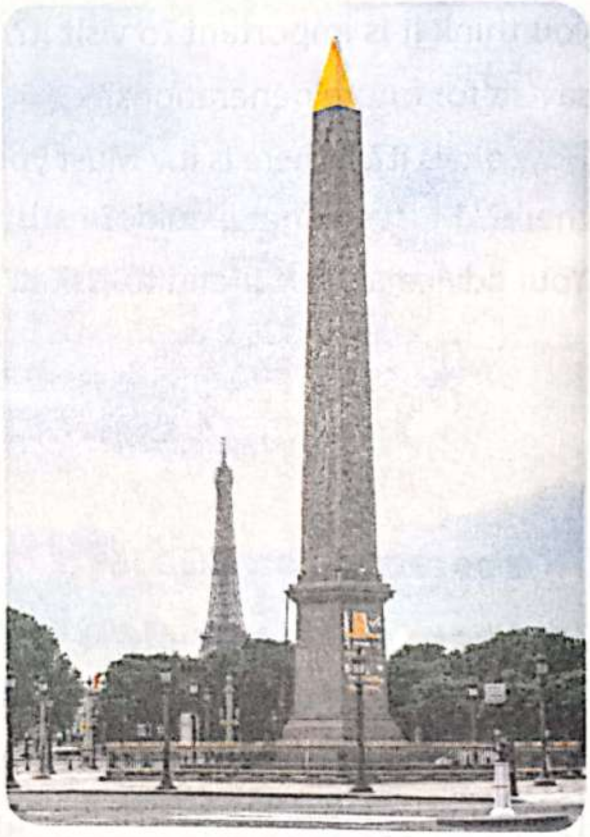
....



....



....



....



Unit 5 Helping you, helping me

Objectives of the unit

Reading : An article about kindness; blogs about volunteering for charities; *A little Princess*; a news report about a charity; a blog about a project

Writing : A blog post

Listening : Conversations about jobs in the house; descriptions of photos; stories about people who helped; people making suggestions

Speaking : A discussion about jobs in the house; discussing random acts of kindness; making suggestions

Language : *who, which, that, where*

Life Skills : Participation; Collaboration: sharing

Tapescript

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات   SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب   تشير لأسئلة المتميزين

Lessons 1& 2

SB pages 44-47 WB pages 103 & 104

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1

apartment = flat	شقة	lucky	محظوظ	tidy	مرتب
clothes	ملابس	messy	فوضوى/غير مرتب	toy	لعبة أطفال
full	ممتلئ	rubbish	قمامة		
lift	مصعد	stairs	سلالم		

Jobs in the house — مهام منزلية

cook (ed)	يطهى/يطبخ	put away	يضع شيئًا فى مكانه	wash up	يغسل الأطباق
look (ed) after	يعتنى بـ	take out	يُخرج/يزيل شيئًا		
make the bed	يرتب الفراش	tidy up	يرتب		

Lesson 2

acts	أفعال/أعمال	problem	مشكلة	smile (d)	ابتسامة/يبتسم
advertisement	إعلان	purse	كيس نقود/محفظة	stranger	غريب
fantastic	رائع	random	عشوائى	thief	لص/حرامى
kindness	لطف/عطف	Random Acts of Kindness Day	يوم اللطف العالمى	tips	نصائح
practise (d)	يمارس	restaurant	مطعم		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 1

bin	سلة القمامة	meal	وجبة	sunglasses	نظارة شمس
during	خلال/أثناء	person	شخص	wheelchair	كرسى متحرك
floor	طابق/دور	short distance	مسافة قصيرة		
koushari	كشرى	snack	وجبة خفيفة		

Lesson 2

address	عنوان (منزل)	California	كاليفورنيا (مدينة)	test	اختبار/فحص
alone	وحيدًا/بمفرده	carry (y-ied)	يحمل	the police	الشرطة
America	أمريكا (دولة)	check (ed)	يفحص/يتحقق/يراجع		
borrow (ed)	يستعير	footballer	لاعب كرة القدم		

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 1

do ▶	the cooking	تقوم بالطهى	get	▶ his bag ready	يجهز حقيبته
	homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى	take ▶	the lift/stairs	يأخذ المصعد/السلالم
get on ▶	the bus	يركب الأتوبيس		turns	يتناوب الأدوار

Lesson 2

	all over the world	فى كل أنحاء العالم	make ▶	friends with	يكـوّن صداقة مع
do ▶	kind things	يفعل أشياء لطيفة		tea	يُعِـد شايًا
	random acts of kindness	يقوم بأعمال لطف عشوائية	play ▶	video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو
give ▶	a seat to	يعطى المقعد لـ	start ▶	school	يبدأ الدراسة

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 1

happy about	سعيد بشأن	go down to	يهبط/ينزل إلى	What sort of ...?	ما نوع ...؟
on the third floor	فى الطابق الثالث	help in the house	يساعد فى المنزل		

Lesson 2

care about	يهتم/يعتنى بـ	kind to	عطوف/طيب مع	run after	يجرى وراء/خلف
for no reason	بلا سبب/بدون سبب	look inside	ينظر بداخل	see a smile on	يرى ابتسامة على
give back	يُـرجع/يُـعيد	purse with money	كيس به نقود	spend money on	ينفق مالًا على

UNIT 5

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 1

after	بعد	before	قبل	heavy	ثقيل	light	خفيف
full	ممتلئ	empty	فارغ	right	صحيح	wrong	خطأ

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Lesson 2

Present		Past simple	Past participle
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
put away	يضع شيئًا فى مكانه	put away	put away
stand up	يقف	stood up	stood up

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 2

fantastic	رائع	very good
kindness	لطف/عطف	when you do things to help others and show you care about them
random	عشوائى	happening without a plan
smile	ابتسامة	the shape of your mouth that shows you are happy
strangers	أشخاص غرباء	people you don't know

Language Notes

make + noun/object (اسم - مفعول) + adjective يجعل

- Some friends in California wanted to make the world **better**.

Write it right

How to write about random acts of kindness

كيفية الكتابة عن أفعال العطف العشوائية (التلقائية)

- It's important for us all to do random acts of kindness.
- When you do something kind to someone, they will take that act of kindness and move it to other people.
- We should help strangers.
- We should do random acts of kindness every day.
- Random acts of kindness can make the world better.

Writing tips

A paragraph has:
- a topic sentence.
- supporting sentences.
- a concluding sentence.

يجب أن تحتوي الفقرة على:
- جملة رئيسية.
- جمل مساعدة وموضحة للموضوع.
- جملة تلخيصية (تلخص الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة).

Example

Random acts of kindness

It's important to do random acts of kindness. The smallest things can make others smile. I think that if you do something kind to someone, they will take that act of kindness and move it to people they come across during their day. It's the smallest things that make the biggest differences. For example, holding the door for someone who has their hands full or smiling at a stranger as they pass by, these little things let people know that someone cares about them. Today, before you go to bed, do a random act of kindness. It can be to someone you know or someone who is a complete stranger, but it has to be random. Someday you will receive a random act of kindness in return.

Check Point:

Write a paragraph about "Kindness":

"Kindness"

....

....

....

....

Lesson 1 — Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - How do you help around your house?

1. Listen to four teenagers doing the jobs on page 44. What do they do to help in the house? Listen and match the names with the jobs. ***SB page 45***

Hala : I'm Hala. I have to make my bed (1) every day and tidy up (2) my bedroom once a week. My mother isn't happy about how messy (3) I am because there are often things on my bed, but I always tidy up once a week on Saturday morning. It takes a long time. I have to put away (4) all my clothes (5).



Munir : My name's Munir. During the week, my sister and I take turns to wash up (6) after meals. I wash up after dinner on Mondays and Wednesdays and she washes up after dinner on Tuesdays and Thursdays. Sometimes, I help my grandmother to do the cooking. I love making koushari.



Adam : I'm Adam. I help with different things at home but my most difficult job is taking out (7) our rubbish. I don't have to do this every day; only when the bins are full. I usually take out the bins in the evening on Wednesdays and Sundays. Our apartment (8) is on the third floor so I have to go down to the street in the lift (9). The bins are heavy when they are full!



Nader : I sometimes have to look after my brother after school, but I like doing this. We play games and I give him a snack to eat. He doesn't have to do any homework yet, but he has to get his bag ready for school and I make sure he has the right books.



(1) يرتب السرير
(2) ينظم
(3) غير مرتب
(4) يضع الشيء في مكانه
(5) ملابس
(6) يغسل الأطباق
(7) يخرج
(8) شقة
(9) مصعد

Post-listening question: - Which job do you think is the easiest? Why?

Lesson 1

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What do you have to do every day?

3. Complete the text with the correct form of have to: *WB page 102*



We're going on a boat today. It's going to be hot, so you **have to** wear sunglasses and a hat. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous. Dina uses a wheelchair[1], so she **has to** go on the boat first. You all have to be careful when you get on the boat. You also **have to** sit down when the boat is moving, but you **don't have to** sit when the boat stops. You can stand up then. Finally, if you see a dolphin[2], you **have to** tell us! That is why we are going!

(1) كرسي متحرك
(2) دولفين

Post-reading question:

- What do they have to do when the boat is moving?

Lesson 2

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- How did you feel the first day of your new school?

2. Listen to two people talking about the photos. Do they have the same ideas as you?

SB page 46



Adel : The girl looks sad to be alone. I think she's new in the school and doesn't have any friends yet. The other students shouldn't forget how it feels when you start school. They should try to make friends with her.

Samir : A man forgot his bag. Someone should look inside the bag to find his name and address. Or they should run after him and give the bag back to him.

Adel : The woman looks really tired! I think someone in her family should make her a cup of tea and she should have a rest. They should take the children outside and play with them.

Samir : She shouldn't carry all those things. Someone should carry some of the things for her.

Post-listening question:

- What should the families do with their children?

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Why should we all be kind?

5. Read the article. What happens on Random Acts of Kindness Day?

SB page 47

Random acts of kindness



(1) أفعال عشوائية من اللطف

(2) سبب

(3) الغرباء

(4) يوم اللطف العالمى

(5) ابتسامة

(6) رائع

In 1982, some friends were in a restaurant in California, USA. They wanted to make the world better. One of the friends, Anne Herbert, wrote down her idea: *Practise* random acts of kindness[1]. A random act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason[2]. You can do random acts of kindness for the people you know: for example, buy flowers for your mother. You can also be kind to strangers[3]: for example, give your seat to someone on a bus.

Now, February 17th is Random Acts of Kindness Day[4]. All over the world, people do kind things for the day: not because they have to, but because they want to see a smile[5] on a person's face. Isn't that a fantastic[6] idea?

Post-reading question: - When is Random Acts of Kindness Day?

Project

1. Try to do random acts of kindness for three days, at home and at school.
2. Take notes about what you do and how people feel. You will need these notes later in the unit.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm very .... today because I found a good job and met my old best friend.
   a) messy b) lazy c) tidy d) lucky
2. Students .... turns to answer questions.
   a) plan b) do c) make d) take
3. My sister likes helping mum to .... the cooking.
   a) do b) make c) have d) pay
4. He lives on the 17th floor. He always takes the ....
   a) steps b) ladder c) lift d) plane
5. I usually .... my baby sister when my parents are away.
   a) look after b) wash up c) tidy up d) look up
6. You should .... your things after using them.
   a) take out b) look after c) put away d) give up
7. My mother always takes out the rubbish when the bin is ....
   a) full b) empty c) lazy d) tidy
8. I bought a lovely .... for my mother to put her money in.
   a) ring b) scarf c) necklace d) purse
9. It's friendly to meet people with a ....
   a) smile b) sadness c) damage d) cry
10. Our children don't often talk to ....
    a) runners b) waiters c) strangers d) designers
11. To be good at English, you should .... it.
    a) recommend b) practise c) tell d) play
12. I recommend you watch that film. It's ....
    a) amazed b) ugly c) fantastic d) boring
13. When you are on a bus, you should .... your seat to older people.
    a) take b) give c) touch d) sell
14. Our apartment is .... the fifth floor.
    a) in b) from c) on d) between
15. These are the .... you should follow to be fit.
    a) tubes b) tips c) lips d) taps

Language

1 has to/have to:

1. We use *(has to/have to)* when it's necessary to do something: you have no choice.

- نستخدم (has to/have to) (يضطر أن) عندما يكون من الضرورى فعل أمر ما: ليس لديك اختيار.

Form التكوين

He / She / It (اسم مفرد)	has to + inf.	I / We / You / They (اسم جمع)	have to + inf.

- My father has to **get up** at six o'clock every day to go to work.
- I have to **wear** the school uniform.

2. We use *(doesn't/don't have to)* to talk about things that are not necessary.

Negative النفى

He / She / It (اسم مفرد)	doesn't have to + inf.
I / We / You / They (اسم جمع)	don't have to + inf.

- My mother doesn't have to **go** to work today because it's a holiday.
- We don't have to **get up** early. It's Friday.

1. Yes/No questions:

Do/Does + sub. + have to + **inf.?**

Question
السؤال

- Do you have to **go** to school?
  - Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
- Does Ola have to **go** to work?
  - Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.

2. Wh-questions:

Question word (كلمة الاستفهام) + do/does + sub. + have to + **inf.?**

- What do you have to do after school?
  - I have to **do** my homework.
- What time does Heba have to arrive at school?
  - She has to **arrive** at school at seven thirty.

2 Giving advice using (should & shouldn't)

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام (ينبغى أن - لا ينبغى أن)

- **We use should / shouldn't to say that something is or is not a good idea.**

- عند إعطاء النصح نستخدم should (ينبغى أن) أو shouldn't (لا ينبغى أن) ثم الفعل فى المصدر

Subject + should + inf.	**Subject + shouldn't + inf.**
- You should **go** now. The bus leaves in ten minutes. - Children should **sleep** early.	- You shouldn't **watch** too much television. - She shouldn't **carry** all those things.

لاحظ الفرق

- نستخدم (has/have to) للتعبير عن إلزام خارجى.

- You have to **wear** the school uniform.

(شىء مضطر لفعله وليس لدى اختيار)

- بينما نستخدم (should) للنصيحة.

- It's Nader's birthday. I should **buy** him a present.

(شىء يمكن فعله ويمكن أيضا عدم فعله، ليس هناك إلزام).

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We .... cook more; there's enough food.
   a) have to b) don't have to c) has to d) should
2. I don't like that uniform, but I .... wear it at work.
   a) mustn't b) shouldn't
   c) have to d) don't have to
3. It's cold. You .... wear your jacket.
   a) shouldn't b) should c) don't have to d) mustn't
4. She's always tired. She .... go to bed late every night.
   a) shouldn't b) should
   c) have to d) don't have to
5. You .... remember to close the windows when you leave the house.
   a) mustn't b) don't have to
   c) should d) has to
6. You .... eat fast food every day. It's very bad for you.
   a) must b) have to
   c) don't have to d) shouldn't
7. I .... wear glasses because I can't see very well.
   a) mustn't b) don't have to c) have to d) shouldn't
8. .... wear a uniform?
   a) Has he to b) Does he has to
   c) Does he have to d) Should he to
9. You .... pay to use the library. It's free.
   a) don't have to b) must
   c) should d) have to

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. At our school we <u>haven't to</u> wear a uniform. (.................)
2. <u>Does</u> the boys have to get up early? (.................)
3. You <u>doesn't</u> have to shout. I can hear you. (.................)
4. We <u>has to</u> leave now or we'll miss the plane. (.................)
5. You <u>have</u> to go to school today. It's Friday. (.................)

Speaking

A discussion about jobs in the house مناقشة عن المهام المنزلية

Do you have to walk to school?
هل تضطر أن تمشى إلى المدرسة؟

No, I don't. I take the bus. لا، أنا أركب الأتوبيس.

What sort of jobs do you have to do at home?
ما نوع المهام التى تضطر أن تؤديها بالمنزل؟

I have to tidy up my bedroom. أضطر أن أرتب غرفة نومى.

Does your best friend have to walk to school?
هل يضطر صديقك المفضل للمشى إلى المدرسة؟

Yes, he does. نعم.

How much homework do you have to do this evening?
كم كمية الواجب المنزلى التى ينبغى عليك فعلها الليلة؟

I have to do the English homework.
أضطر الى عمل واجب اللغة الإنجليزية.

Type a message

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

Boody : Hello, Roaa. How are you?
Roaa : Hi, Boody. I'm fine.
Boody : What jobs do you (1)................................ to do at home?
Roaa : I have to (2)................................ lunch.
Boody : (3)................................ you have to clean the floor?
Roaa : No. My sister cleans it.
Boody : Does your brother have to walk to school?
Roaa : No, he (4)................................ . He goes by bike.
Boody : What about you?
Roaa : I (5)................................ the bus.

Lessons 1&2

General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Manal : I'm going to travel to London next month.

Hanaa : That's (1).. news!

Manal : What do you think I should see in London first?

Hanaa : Historic places, I think. You (2).. go to the House of Parliament and the National Gallery.

Manal : And what about the British Museum?

Hanaa : Oh, yes. You (3).. go there certainly.

Manal : I'll go to the museum in the afternoon.

Hanaa : That's not good. You (4).. to be there early.

Manal : Why (5).. I have to go early?

Hanaa : Because there are hundreds of tourists visiting it this season.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10

1. It's sunny today, you should wear your ....
   a) coat b) jacket c) jumper d) sunglasses
2. You show .... when you do things to help others and show you care about them.
   a) kindness b) sadness c) carelessness d) laziness
3. People take the .... to go up or down any building.
   a) ladders b) seats c) stairs d) walls
4. .... means happening without a plan.
   a) Random b) Freedom c) Kindness d) Sorrow
5. If you want to start running, you should start with short ....
   a) areas b) distances c) cities d) countries
6. People who can't walk, usually have a/an .... to help them.
   a) armchair b) seat c) sofa d) wheelchair

7. The .... goes to prison for taking things that don't belong to him.
   a) police b) thief c) volunteer d) charity
8. Hani .... stay after the working hours, but he does sometimes.
   a) doesn't have to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) haven't
9. Why .... care about your problems?
   a) can I b) should I c) I must d) I should
10. You .... play football here. It's dangerous.
   a) have to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. I don't know what I shouldn't do with my old clothes. (.......................)
2. Have you to wear special clothes for your sports class? (.......................)
3. She have to show her mother her homework. (.......................)
4. What I should do to get the full mark? (.......................)

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

6

"Your school rules"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

25

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
...... / 30			...... / 25			...... / 55		
(1-15)	(16-24)	(25-30)	(1-12)	(13-20)	(21-25)	(1-27)	(28-48)	(49-55)

Notes

....
....
....
....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 48-50 WB pages 104 & 105

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3

trainers	حذاء رياضي	disabled	معاق	lift (ed)	يرفع
perhaps	ربما	extracts	مقتطفات	feed	يُطعم
community	مجتمع/جماعة/جالية	donate (d)	يتبرع بـ	pick up	يلتقط

Lesson 4

beggar	متسول /شحاذ	cruel (to)	قاسٍ (على)	princess	أميرة
behave (d)	يتصرف	generous	كريم	servant	خادم
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	headteacher	مدير المدرسة	surprised	مندهش

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3

bottle	زجاجة	lady	سيدة	ring	خاتم
café	مقهى	neighbour	جار	secondary school	المدرسة الثانوية
delicious	لذيذ	place	مكان	sports person	شخص رياضي
famous	مشهور	reach (ed)	يصل الى	volleyball	الكرة الطائرة

Lesson 4

certain	معين/محدد	polite to	مؤدب مع	baker's	مخبز
direction	اتجاه	real	حقيقي	useful	مفيد

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 3

behave ▶ like a princess	تتصرف كأميرة	pass ▶ exams	ينجح فى الامتحانات
get ▶ lost	يضل الطريق		

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 3

a home for	دار/بيت لـ	difficult for	صعب لـ
ask for	يطلب	refer to	يشير إلى
come out	يخرج	work for	يعمل لدى

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 3

kind to	عطوف مع	unkind to	غير عطوف مع	rich	غني	poor	فقير

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 3		
community	مجتمع/جماعة/جالية	a small area and the people who live in it
disabled	معاق	when you cannot use part of the body in the way most people can
donate	يتبرع	give something useful to a person or charity that needs help
feed	يُطعم	give food to a person or animal
pick up	يلتقط	lift someone or something
Lesson 4		
beggar	متسول/شحاذ	a poor person who asks others for money, etc.
behave	يتصرف	do or be a certain way
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	a school where students live all the time
cruel	قاس	not kind
servant	خادم	a person who works in a house, cooking, cleaning, etc.

Language Notes

is called يدعى/يسمى

- The woman who I visited **is called** Mrs Nahla.

Write it right

How to write about your favourite story

كيفية الكتابة عن قصتك المفضلة

- I like reading (نوع) stories.
- My favourite story is (اسم القصة).
- It's by (اسم الكاتب).
- It's about (فكرة القصة).
- It teaches us to (الدروس المستفادة).
- It's fantastic.

Writing tips

Use joining words to connect ideas:
and / but / because / so / however

- استخدم كلمات الوصل للربط بين الأفكار.

To : Basmala
From : Rahma
Subject : A story I read

Dear Basmala,

Greetings! How are you and your family? I hope you all are in good health. I'm very happy to write this email to you. I like reading very much. I read a story by Frances Hodgson Burnett. It's called *A Little Princess*. It's about a small girl whose father died and she became poor. She was in a boarding school. The headteacher made her a servant, but Sara behaved well like a princess. I recommend this story to you. It's really fantastic. I look forward to hearing from you.

Write soon.

Yours,

Rahma

Check Point:

Write an email to your friend Nesma to tell her about your favourite story. Your name is Donia.

Lesson 3 Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Mention one person who helped you. How did he/she help you?

2. Listen to Amal, check your answers to Exercise 1 and complete the sentences.

SB page 48



Amal : Our neighbour, Mr Osman, is the person who helped me pass my maths exams. He's 70 and doesn't work now, but he was a maths teacher before. The books which he used to help me were his old school books from when he was teaching at secondary school. My Aunt Dalia is a person who's always very kind to me. She bought me the trainers that I wore when I played in the school volleyball team for the first time. We won the match! My little cousin Rana helped me last week when I lost my watch. I was sad because it was the watch that my father gave me for my birthday. The place where I lost it was the garden. I took it off when I was playing and it fell. Rana found it under a plant. Because her hand is so small, she could put it under the plant and reach the watch.

Post-listening question:

- How did Rana get the watch?

Lesson 3

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- Do you do voluntary work? Why?

6. Read the extracts from the blogs of three teenagers and complete the sentences.

SB page 49

متطوع (1)
جمعية خيرية (2)
محلى (3)
قمامة (4)
مجتمع (5)
معاق (6)
رائع (7)
يتبرع (8)
يُطعم (9)



I work as a volunteer[1] for a charity[2] which helps to clean our local[3] beach. At the weekend, we go to the beach and pick up the rubbish[4] that people left behind. We always pick up lots of plastic bottles!

Samir

It is good to help people in the community[5]. I visit a home for old people who are disabled[6], so it's difficult for their families to look after them. I go there after school on Thursdays. The volunteers have a special person who we visit and talk to. The woman who I visit is called Mrs Nahla. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic[7] person. I love talking to her.



Fatma

I work for a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick and cannot work any more. People donate[8] money to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. We help to feed[9] the animals and look after them. This camel is very old and she is my favourite animal.



Ahmed

Post-reading question:

- Why do people donate money to charities?

Lesson 4 | Reading Text

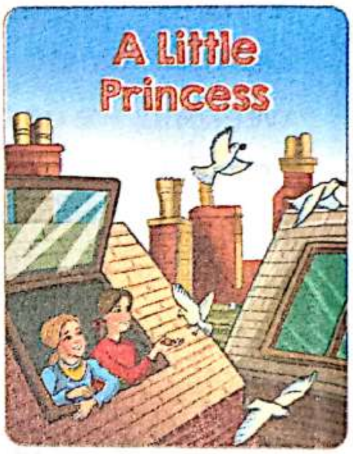
Pre-reading question:
- What's your favourite story?

2. Read part of A Little Princess and check your answers to exercise 1.

SB page 50

A Little Princess

by Frances Hodgson Burnett



Everyone at Sara Crewe's boarding school (1) calls her 'a little princess' because her father is very rich. After Sara's father dies, the headteacher (2), Miss Minchin, starts being cruel (3) to Sara because she has no money. She makes Sara work as a servant (4). Sara has to work very hard and does not get much food. However, Sara decides to behave (5) like a real princess (6), so she is always kind and polite (7) to everyone.

One day, Sara finds some money. She goes to the baker's to buy some cakes. When she comes out, she sees a beggar (8) and gives the girl most of her cakes. Sara can see that this girl is cold and hungry. Sara thinks that a real princess should always be kind and generous (9) like this. When the baker sees this, she is surprised. This girl is very strange. She is very poor, but she is kind to beggars, she thinks.

مدرسة داخلية (1)
مديرة المدرسة (2)
قاسي (3)
خادمة (4)
تتصرف (5)
أميرة (6)
مهذب (7)
متسول/شحاذ (8)
كريم (9)

Post-reading question:
- What did you learn from the story?

Lesson 4

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What does a baker do?

3. Read what the baker said about Sara Crewe and answer the questions.

WB page 105



I think that the girl who came into my baker's shop today was a servant, because she didn't have very new clothes. The money that she had was enough to buy a few cakes. I often see a beggar[1] in the street where I work. She usually asks for money, but when the young girl left my shop, she gave her most of her cakes! I was very surprised[2]. I feel that this servant girl behaved like a princess!

(1) شحاذ/متسول

(2) مندهش

Post-reading question:

- Where does the baker often see the beggar?

Life Skills

People who are volunteers for a charity help their communities. What are some other ways we can help in the community?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Players should wear the best .... when they play to help them run.
   a) glasses b) trainers c) jeans d) jackets
2. I saw a .... man who cannot walk and uses a wheelchair.
   a) messy b) generous c) clever d) disabled
3. The rich help poor people a lot when they .... money to charities.
   a) sell b) borrow c) donate d) lose
4. A .... school is a school where students study and live all the time.
   a) boarding b) board c) broad d) abroad
5. Children like to go to the zoo and .... animals there.
   a) drive b) play c) feed d) eat
6. A .... is the daughter of the king or queen.
   a) prince b) princess c) servant d) ruler
7. Be careful! You're a small boy. You can't .... this heavy bag alone.
   a) stop b) leave c) lift d) left
8. The .... means people who live in a certain area in a city or a town.
   a) community b) distance c) country d) village
9. We shouldn't be .... to animals.
   a) kind b) polite c) tidy d) cruel
10. Nowadays there are many .... in most streets who ask for money.
    a) servants b) beggars c) sellers d) actors
11. My grandfather always gives us money and presents. He is ....
    a) lucky b) tidy c) clever d) generous
12. A .... is a person who works in houses.
    a) servant b) headteacher c) beggar d) princess
13. A kind person is someone who .... well.
    a) sleeps b) plays c) behaves d) travels
14. I usually .... school on time.
    a) arrive b) get c) go d) reach
15. The baker looked .... when Sara gave all cakes to the beggar.
    a) surprise b) surprising c) surprised d) surprises

Language

Relative clauses ضمائر الوصل

- We use defining relative clauses/pronouns to help identify a person, thing or place.

نستخدم ضمائر الوصل لتساعدنا على التعرف على شخص، شيء أو مكان.

who / that - which / that - where

who = that الذى / التى

We use the relative pronoun (who/that) for people.

نستخدم (who/that) بمعنى (الذى/التى) مع العاقل ويأتى قبلها إنسان:

- Mr Zaki is the **teacher** (who/that) helped me the most when I started at this school.
- This is the **boy** (who/that) won the game.

which = that الذى / التى

We use the relative pronoun (which/that) for things and animals.

نستخدم (which/that) بمعنى (الذى/التى) مع غير العاقل (أشياء أو حيوانات) ويأتى قبلها اسم غير عاقل:

- The **present** (which/that) I bought for my grandmother is in my bag.
- The **car** (which/that) I bought is expensive.

where حيث

We use the relative pronoun (where) for places.

نستخدم (where) بمعنى (حيث) مع الأماكن بشرطين (أن تعبر عن مكان أو ما بداخله ولا يوجد حرف جر لهذا المكان):

- Alexandria is the **city** where both my sisters are studying.
- This is the **room** where Samy usually works.

لاحظ ١: يمكننا استخدام ضمير الوصل (that) بدلًا من (who / which) مع العاقل وغير العاقل.

- This is the man (who / that) lives next door to Samy.
- This is the cat (which / that) ate the fish.

لاحظ ٢: نستخدم (which) مع المكان إذا كنا نريد وصفه أو إعطاء معلومة عنه مثل:

- We bought a flat which is near the school.
- This is the house which Mr Adel bought.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We arrived at a nice beach, ... we could swim and sit in the sun.
   a) who b) which c) what d) where
2. A waiter is a man .... serves drinks and food in a restaurant.
   a) who b) when c) whose d) which
3. Thank you very much for your e-mail .... was very interesting.
   a) what b) who c) where d) that
4. The children .... shouted in the street are not from our school.
   a) which b) who c) where d) whose
5. We went to the mosque .... is in the middle of the square.
   a) which b) where c) who d) whose
6. A library is a building .... you can borrow books.
   a) who b) where c) that d) which
7. What did you do with the money .... your mother gave you?
   a) no word b) who c) where d) what
8. Mr Kamal, ... is a taxi driver, lives next door.
   a) whose b) who's c) who d) which
9. That's Ahmed, the boy .... waiting there.
   a) that b) who c) whose d) who's

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. This is the girl <u>whose</u> comes from Spain. (............................)
2. He wore a mask <u>where</u> made him look like Mickey Mouse. (............................)
3. He came with a friend <u>whose</u> waited outside in the car. (............................)
4. The bag <u>who</u> has the money was yellow. (............................)
5. Can I talk to the girl <u>whose</u> sitting on the bench? (............................)

Lessons 3 & 4

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

1. A: Why did you think she is a servant? B: She had .... clothes.
   a) modern b) many c) few d) old
2. How did you feel at the end?
   a) Surprised. b) Worried.
   c) Angry. d) Happy.
3. Who took most of the cakes?
   a) Nobody. b) The baker.
   c) The beggar. d) Sara.
4. A: How did Sara behave? B: Like a ....
   a) thief b) child
   c) princess d) servant

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. To be .... means not to use part of the body in the way most people can.
   a) lucky b) tidy c) lazy d) disabled
2. A .... is a poor person who asks others for money, etc.
   a) beggar b) servant c) thief d) teacher
3. My mother is an excellent cook. She cooks .... food.
   a) generous b) disabled c) delicious d) ugly
4. To .... is to give something useful to a person or charity that needs help.
   a) borrow b) donate c) lift d) steal
5. A .... school is a school where students live all the time.
   a) boarding b) nursery c) primary d) secondary
6. Mohamed Salah is a .... sports person.
   a) greedy b) messy c) lazy d) famous
7. To .... is to give food to a person or an animal.
   a) eat b) lift c) feed d) drink

8. This dress is made of wool, ... is a very expensive material.

a) who b) which c) where d) whose

9. Everybody was talking about the accident .... happened last week.

a) who b) that c) where d) when

10. What is the name of the prison .... Nelson Mandela stayed?

a) when b) who c) where d) that

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. At the zoo, there is a parrot <u>where</u> can talk to the people. (....................)
2. Benha is the city <u>that</u> I was born. (....................)
3. Did you see the car <u>who</u> Adel bought? (....................)
4. I need someone <u>whose</u> can fix my washing machine. (....................)

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Esraa to tell her about a story you like. Your name is Hend.

6

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
..../30			..../24			..../54		
☹	😐	☺	☹	😐	☺	☹	😐	☺
(1-15)	(16-25)	(26-30)	(1-11)	(12-19)	(20-24)	(1-26)	(27-45)	(46-54)

Notes

....

....

....

....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 51 & 52 WB pages 106 & 107

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 5

businesswoman	سيدة أعمال	give away	يتبرع
donation	تبرع	share (d)	يشارك/يقسم

Numbers الأرقام

hundred	مائة	million	مليون	thousand	ألف

Lesson 6

blog	مدونة إلكترونية	helpful	معاون/مساعد/مفيد	snow (ed)	تمطر ثلجًا
geography	جغرافيا	laboratory	معمل	sunny	مشمس

Words of order كلمات الترتيب

first	أولاً	secondly	ثانيًا	next	التالى
then	ثم	after that	بعد ذلك	finally	أخيرًا/ فى النهاية

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 6

firefighter	رجل الإطفاء	pilot	طيار	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
fisherman	صياد	Rod al-Farag Axis Bridge	كوبرى محور روض الفرج	soft	ناعم/طرى/لين
passport	جواز سفر	sailor	بحَّار	somebody	شخص ما

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 5

as possible	بقدر المستطاع/ الإمكان		

Lesson 6

fight fire	يحارب (يخمد) النار	twice a week	مرتان فى الأسبوع

UNIT 5

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 5

at first	فى البداية	decide to	يقرر أن

Lesson 6

in my opinion	فى رأيى	on a project	فى مشروع
on the street corner	على ناصية الشارع	try to	يحاول أن

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 7

bins	سلات القمامة	you put rubbish in these
lift	مِصْعَد	this takes you to the top of a building, without using the stairs
messy	فوضوى	not tidy
princess	أميرة	the daughter of a king or queen
purse	حافظة نقود حريمى	something women use to carry their money in
stranger	غريب	someone you don't know

Language Notes

Reading numbers: قراءة الأرقام

- **435**, 000: **four hundred** and thirty-five thousand.
- **37**, 000, 000: **thirty-seven** million.
- **37**, 435, 191: **thirty-seven million**, four hundred and thirty-five thousand, one hundred and ninety-one

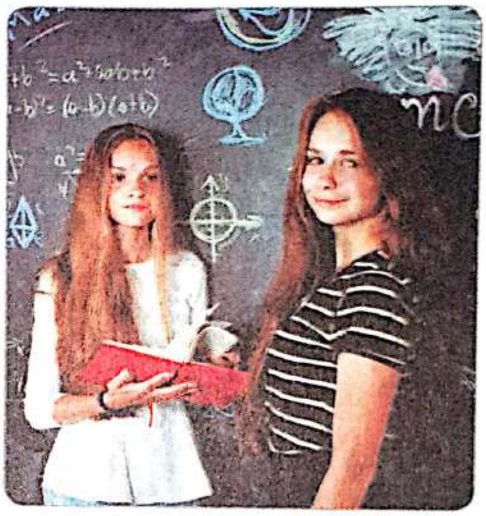
Lesson 5

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:
- Have you volunteered to do charity work before? Tell us more about it.

3. Listen to Leila and Amal talking about the article and answer the questions.

SB page 51



Amal : I think that the charities should share[1] the money between them and help lots of different people.

Leila : I'm not sure, Amal .... I think it would be better if one charity gets all the money and can do something big and important.

Amal : OK, but which charity then?

Leila : What about a charity that helps children ... or old people?

Amal : I agree that it's very important to help children, but I also think it's important to look after old people. That's why I suggest[2] that they share the money.

Leila : I see what you mean. OK, they should share the money between two or three important charities.

(1) يشارك
(2) يقترح

Post-listening question: - Who do you agree with, Leila or Amal? Why?

Lesson 5 — Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What do charities do with the money people donate?

1. Read and complete the newspaper article about another kind person. *SB page 51*

Large charity donation



Fareeda El-Sadat, age 32, has donated[1] two million pounds to charities in the city. The businesswoman[2] says that she wants the charities to use the money to help people who need it. The charities can decide to share[3] the money between them or give all the money to one charity. The important thing is to help as many people as possible[4].

(1) يتبرع
(2) سيدة أعمال
(3) يشارك
(4) بقدر الإمكان

Post-reading question: - Why is the businesswoman giving away money?

Lesson 5 — Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - How can famous people help their community?

4. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 3, then role-play the dialogue. *WB page 106*



Malak: I feel that famous people should work for a charity at the weekend.
Rawia: I'm not sure. Some of them work very hard. I think it would be better if they gave some money to a charity. They don't need to work for a charity.
Malak: I agree that it's important for them to donate money, but I also think it's important to work for the charity, too.
Rawia: OK, but when? They don't have much time. Some of them work every day.
Malak: I see what you mean. Perhaps they can help for a day or two in their holidays.
Rawia: Good idea.

Post-listening question:
- Should famous people just give money or work for some time in charities? Why?

Lesson 6

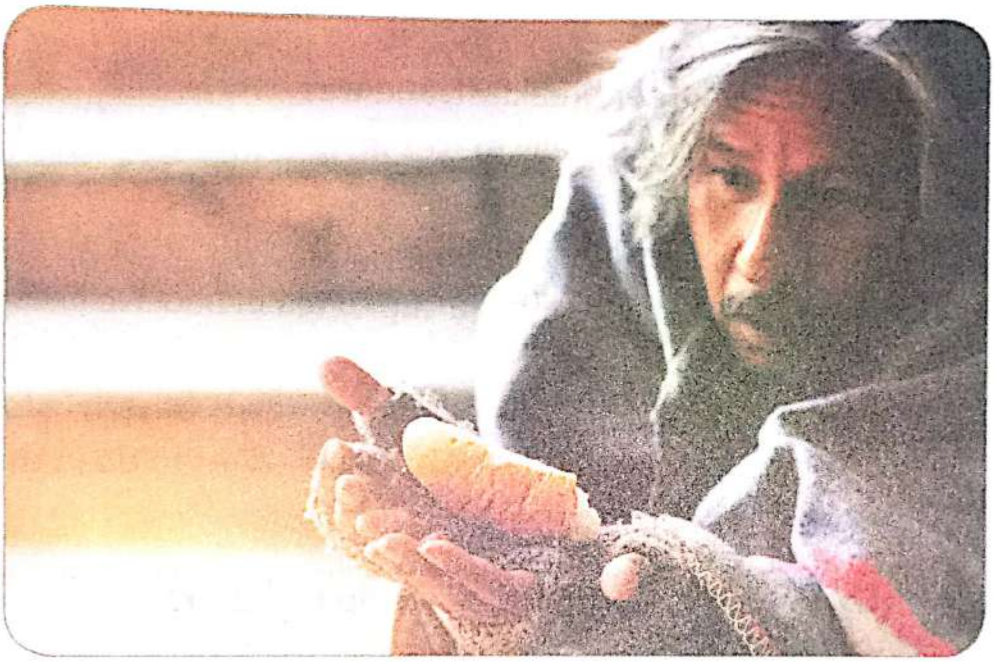
Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What act of kindness did you do today?

1. Read Hassan's blog and answer the questions. ***SB page 52***

Hassan's Blog



Random Acts of Kindness Project

Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days. This is what I did.

First[1], on Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes at the baker's on the way home from school. She was surprised, but very happy! After that[2], on Tuesday, I let some younger students go into the canteen[3] in front of me. Finally[4], on Wednesday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to the old man who often sits on our street corner. He gave me a big smile. In my opinion, doing random acts of kindness is fantastic. I don't want to stop!

(1) أولًا
(2) بعد ذلك
(3) مقصف المدرسة (الكانتين)
(4) فى النهاية

Post-reading question:

- Why should we help the poor?

Lesson 6

Reading and Listening

Pre-reading question: - What jobs did you do at home today?

2. Put Fady's blog into the correct order. *WB page 107*

My helpful day

On Saturday, I decided that I wanted to help everyone in my family.



b. First, I made my mother breakfast. She was surprised because she usually makes it!

e. Secondly, I helped my sister with her homework. She always does it after breakfast!

a. After that, I took my grandfather a cup of tea in bed. He likes to get up late on a Saturday.

c. Then I played football in the park with my little brother. He loves football.

d. Finally, I helped my dad with the jobs that he likes to do in the house. I feel that I made all my family happy!

Post-reading question: - How did Fady help his sister?

Lesson 7

Reading Text

1. Complete the text with the words in the box. *SB page 53*



I share a bedroom with my sister and we are sometimes quite messy [1], so we usually tidy up [2] every evening before we go to bed. We put away [3] all our clothes and books. Twice a week, my brother and I take out [4] the rubbish. We do it together because the bins are quite heavy. My parents donate [5] money to a charity which helps a local school for disabled [6] people.

We think it is important to help people in the community [7].

(1) فوضوى
(2) يرتب
(3) يضع الأشياء فى مكانها
(4) يخرج
(5) يتبرع
(6) معاق
(7) مجتمع

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My aunt is a .... She has a big company.
   a) teacher b) baker c) businesswoman d) secretary
2. A .... is the person who fights fires.
   a) pilot b) sailor c) writer d) firefighter
3. You should show your .... before leaving a country.
   a) report b) blog c) passport d) photo
4. A .... is the person who works at airports.
   a) pilot b) sailor c) writer d) firefighter
5. We should put rubbish in ....
   a) pots b) bins c) bowls d) bottles
6. A .... is something that women use to put their money in.
   a) suitcase b) basket c) purse d) tool
7. A .... is the person who works on a boat.
   a) teacher b) sailor c) doctor d) pilot
8. A .... is something that takes you to the top of a building, without using the stairs.
   a) roof b) wall c) ladder d) lift
9. Teenagers shouldn't spend too much time on .... media.
   a) society b) social c) sociable d) community
10. My little brother likes catching fish. He wants to be a ....
    a) nurse b) fisherman c) waiter d) firefighter
11. This is the .... that my family donates money to.
    a) school b) market c) shop d) charity

Speaking

Making suggestions
تقديم اقتراحات

I feel that we should do an act of kindness every day.
أشعر بأنه يجب علينا أن نعمل عملًا لطيفًا يوميًا.

I see what you mean. أفهم ما تعنيه.

I think it would be better if we donate money to charities.
أعتقد أنه من الأفضل ان نتبرع بالمال للجمعيات الخيرية.

- Good idea. فكرة جيدة.
- OK, but which charity then? حسنًا، ولكن أي جمعية؟

I agree that it's important to give the money to one charity.
أتفق أنه من المهم أن نعطى المال لجمعية خيرية واحدة فقط.

I'm not sure. لست متأكدًا من ذلك.

I think it is important to visit the disabled and help them.
أعتقد انه من المهم زيارة ذوى الإعاقات ومساعدتهم.

Perhaps we should visit them every week.
ربما يجب زيارتهم كل أسبوع.

Type a message

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue: WB

Malak : I feel that famous people should work for a charity at the weekend.

Rawia : I'm (1).. sure. Some of them work very hard.

Malak : What do you think they should do?

Rawia : I think it would be (2).. if they gave some money to a charity.

Malak : I (3).. that it's important for them to donate money.

Rawia : That's exactly what I think.

Malak : But I also (4).. it's important to work for the charity, too.

Rawia : OK, but when? They don't have much time. Some of them work every day.

Malak : I see what you (5).. . Perhaps they can help for a day or two in their holidays.

Rawia : Good idea.

Lessons 5 & 6 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Elham : Manal, what do you think we should do?

Manal : I don't know. (1)................................ watch TV.

Elham : That's a (2)................................ idea. We're going shopping later, so I think you should rest for a while.

Manal : I don't think I want to go anywhere.

Elham : What do you (3)................................? I thought you said we were going shopping.

Manal : I know, but I changed my mind. I'm too tired.

Elham : Well, when (4)................................ you think we'll go?

Manal : Maybe tonight.

Elham : OK, (5)................................ I use your phone?

Manal : Certainly. Here you are.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10

1. If someone is .... to you, they are terrible to you. WB
   a) cruel b) kind c) polite d) clever
2. My little brother gave .... his toys to a charity.
   a) away b) up c) into d) back
3. How much time did you spend .... this project?
   a) at b) in c) of d) on
4. My mother always .... the toys among my little brothers.
   a) puts b) tidies c) washes d) shares
5. I have a/an .... friend. He always helps me.
   a) ugly b) helpful c) rude d) messy
6. This charity has got a lot of .... from rich people.
   a) pollution b) equipment c) donation d) development
7. A scientist does experiments in a ....
   a) laboratory b) prison c) library d) school

8. They .... take a taxi. They're late.
   a) mustn't b) don't have to c) have to d) has to
9. At the weekends, I .... get up early; I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock. WB
   a) mustn't b) must c) have to d) don't have to
10. Yesterday I met Nada and Sally, ... are my sister's friends.
   a) who b) which c) where d) whose

3) Read and correct the underlined words: (4)

1. Did you see the new advertisement where was on TV last night? (........................)
2. Ants are small insects who live in big groups. (........................)
3. Does Amira has to cook lunch today? (........................)
4. We has to leave now or we'll miss the plane. (........................)

4) Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: (6)

"Helping people"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

25

Assess Your Progress

Dictation	General Exercises	Total Marks
...... / 25	...... / 25	...... / 50
(1-13) (14-20) (21-25)	(1-13) (14-20) (21-25)	(1-25) (26-40) (41-50)

Notes

....
....
....
....

Video Script

There are many charities in Egypt that can help people.

The Alhassan Foundation[1] helps disabled people. They give wheelchairs to people who cannot walk.

The charity helps disabled[2] people to find jobs. It also teaches people about how disabled people have to live.

Another charity is the Egyptian Food Bank[3] which gives food to poor people and to people who have lost their jobs.

Every year, people donate[4] more than 100 million Egyptian pounds to this charity. They don't have to do this, but they do it because they want to help.

People can also donate food, such as pasta, rice, meat and fruit, or they can take boxes of food to people in their community[5].

The Red Crescent[6] is one of the most important charities in the world.

A lot of doctors and nurses volunteer for this charity. They treat[7] ill and injured[8] people when there is a natural disaster.

The Red Crescent also helps when the weather is very bad. In 2020, there was a lot of rain in some parts of the country. Too much water caused a lot of damage and many people needed help.

The Red Crescent took medicine and food to these people.

Everybody should donate to a charity if they can. Or perhaps you could volunteer to help?

0:00

(1) مؤسسة الحسن
(2) معاق
(3) بنك الطعام المصرى
(4) يتبرع
(5) مجتمع
(6) الهلال الأحمر
(7) يعالج
(8) مصاب/مجروح

Unit 5 Review

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

acts	أفعال/أعمال	headteacher	مدير المدرسة	servant	خادم
advertisement	إعلان	helpful	معاون/مساعد/مفيد	share (d)	يشارك/يقسم
beggar	متسول /شحاذ	hundred	مائة	short distance	مسافة قصيرة
behave (d)	يتصرف	kindness	لطف/عطف	smile (d)	ابتسامة/يبتسم
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	laboratory	معمل	snack	وجبة خفيفة
care about	يهتم/يعتنى بـ	lift	مصعد	snow (ed)	تمطر ثلجًا
community	مجتمع/جماعة/جالية	lift (ed)	يرفع	stairs	سلالم
cruel (to)	قاس على	look after	يعتنى بـ	stranger	غريب
difficult for	صعب لـ	lucky	محظوظ	sunny	مشمس
disabled	معاق	messy	فوضوى/غير مرتب	surprised	مندهش
donate (d)	يتبرع بـ	million	مليون	take out	يُخرج/يزيل شيئًا
donation	تبرع	perhaps	ربما	take the lift	يأخذ المصعد
extracts	مقتطفات	pick up	يلتقط	thief	لص/حرامى
fantastic	رائع	practise	يمارس	thousand	ألف
feed	يُطعم	princess	أميرة	tidy	مرتب
full	ممتلئ	problem	مشكلة	tidy up	يرتب
generous	كريم	purse	كيس نقود/محفظة	tips	نصائح
get lost	يضل الطريق	put away	يضع شيئًا فى مكانه	toy	لعبة أطفال
give a seat to	يعطى المقعد لـ	random	عشوائى	trainers	حذاء رياضى
give away	يتبرع	restaurant	مطعم	wash up	يغسل الأطباق
give back	يُرجع/يُعيد	rubbish	قمامة	work for	يعمل لدى

Language

1 has/ have to يضطر أن

- Mona has to **tidy** up her room.
- We have to **do** our homework now.

2 should/shouldn't

- You should study hard.
- You shouldn't smoke.

3 Relative pronouns (who/which/where)

- This is the **man** who helped me.
- That's the **tablet** which I bought.
- This is the **school** where I learn.

Speaking

Making suggestions

- I feel that we should do an act of kindness every day.
  - I see what you mean.
- I agree that it's important to give the money to one charity.
  - I'm not sure.
- I think it would be better if we donate money to charities.

Al-Azhar Corner

Based on Unit 5 أسئلة خاصة بأبنائنا طلبة الأزهر الشريف

1) Finish the following two-mini dialogues:

A) Radwa : Do you have to walk to school?

Roqa : ....

B) Norhan : ....?

Nariman : I should visit my grandparents today.

2) Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. My mother doesn't have	a) out the rubbish.
2. We don't have to take	b) for a charity.
3. Someone in her family	c) He is helpful.
4. Mr Osman helps his neighbour.	d) He is hopeful.
5. I work as a volunteer	e) to go to work today.
	f) should make her tea.

Answers: 1. ( ) 2. ( ) 3. ( ) 4. ( ) 5. ( )

3) Write a paragraph of about (7) sentences on:

"Some helpful things you did"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 5

Cumulative Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What film do these people plan to watch?
   a) Matrix Revolution. b) The Two Towers.
   c) Lord of the Rings. d) The Last Samurai.
2. When do they plan to watch the film?
   a) At the weekend. b) Tomorrow.
   c) In the morning. d) Next Friday.
3. Where do they plan to meet?
   a) At the entrance. b) In front of the house.
   c) At the square. d) At home.
4. What time do they plan to meet?
   a) At 7:30 pm. b) At noontime. c) At 3:45 pm. d) At 6:45 pm.

2 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Nasser : Do you have to study this evening, Omar?
Omar : Yes, I (1).. .
Nasser : Which subject do you (2).. to study?
Omar : Geography! I have a geography test tomorrow.
Nasser : What (3).................................... your brother? Does he have to study, too?
Omar : No, he doesn't.
Nasser : What does he have to do then?
Omar : He (4).. to tidy up his bedroom; it's really messy.
Nasser : It's nearly the end of break. Where do we have (5).. go for the next lesson?
Omar : The laboratory! We've got science.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 6

Mrs Saleh had two children. Samy was seven years old, and his sister Nora was four. Samy went to school, but Nora did not. When Samy was at home, he often played with Nora while their mother was cooking or washing or cleaning. Mrs Saleh was usually free to do her work quietly because Samy was very nice to his small sister.

One Friday morning, the two children were playing in the garden while their mother was cooking lunch. They were quite happy until Nora suddenly began to cry and ran into the kitchen to her mother. Mrs Saleh stopped cooking and said, "Why are you crying, Nora?" "Samy broke my toy," Nora answered, crying more loudly. "How did he break it?" her mother asked. Nora stopped crying, but did not answer for a few seconds. Then she said, "I hit him on the head with it."

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

....

2. Why was Mrs Saleh usually free to do her work quietly?

....

3. How old was Samy's sister?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "loudly" means ....

a) calmly b) noisily c) kindly d) quietly

5. When Nora cried, her mother was in the ....

a) garden b) bedroom c) kitchen d) school

6. The toy was ....

a) repaired b) cleaned c) broken d) old

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. Hala is a .... person. She doesn't put anything in its right place.

a) tidy b) messy c) lucky d) full

2. They should try to .... friends with her.

a) take b) make c) talk d) give

3. Nader helps his brother .... his school bag ready. SB

a) leave b) get c) stay d) spend

4. Someone should run after Tarek and give the bag .... SB

a) in b) out c) back d) up

5. They gave the footballer a .... test to check his health. WB

a) messy b) lucky c) tidy d) random

6. The book is .... You should read it. WB

a) fantastic b) ugly c) bad d) boring

7. Adam knew everyone in the village, so he was surprised when a .... walked into his shop. WB

a) neighbour b) relative c) stranger d) officer

8. I remembered the man .... I met at the party.

a) where b) which c) who d) when

9. You .... take a bus, I'll drive you to school.

a) don't have to b) must c) should d) can

10. I .... do my homework. My teacher always checks if we have done the exercises.

a) should b) has to c) have to d) must to

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. Does you have to look after your baby sister at the weekend? (......................)
2. You have to take out the rubbish, I did it this morning. (......................)
3. The tourists what visit Egypt always love the ancient temples. (......................)
4. This is the museum who I visited last year. (......................)

6 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Nesma to tell her about charity work. Your name is Rahma.

6

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

35

Unit 5 Research Projects

1. Home rules

Do a research on "Home rules".

Use these guiding points to help you:

- Why do you think following rules is important?
- What do you have to do at home?/ What don't you have to do at home?
- Your advice to your friend to have a rule to follow.



2. Charity work you did

Do a research on "Charity work you did".

Use these guiding points to help you:

- What is the importance of doing some good things to others?
- Mention your charity work in detail
- How is charity work improving different lives?



Research steps

1. A suitable title
2. An introduction
3. Main ideas and information
4. The results
5. Resources

Look and mention what jobs they do:

1



2



3



4

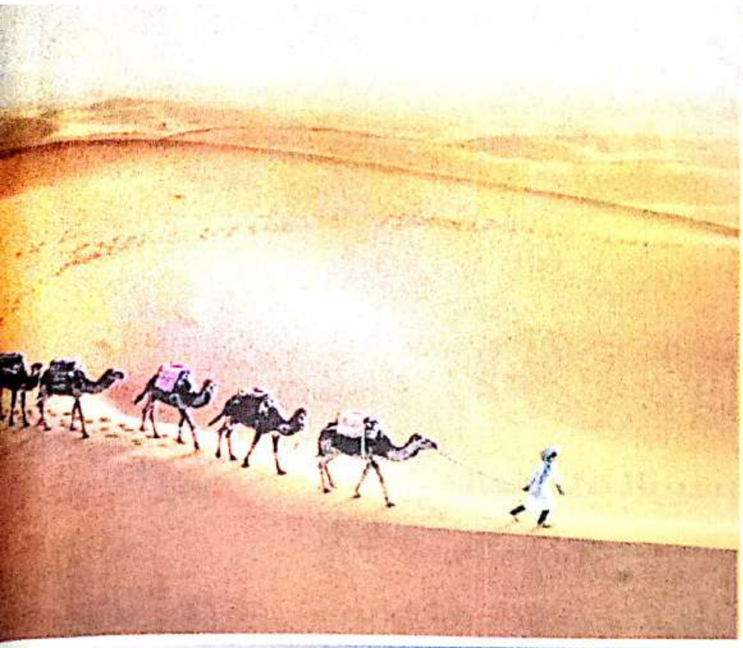


1 ....

2 ....

3 ....

4 ....






Unit 6 Different environments

Objectives of the unit

Reading : A presentation about climate change graphs; city profiles; a newspaper report
Writing : A profile of where you live; a short report for a school newspaper; a presentation about the climate
Listening : Radio news reports; a podcast about tourism
Speaking : Solving environmental problems; suggesting solutions to a problem
Language : (not) as + adjective + as; present simple passive
Life Skills : Negotiating; problem solving
Values : Coexistence values; responsible behaviour

Tapescript

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات   SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب   تشير لأسئلة المتميزين

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 54-57 WB pages 109 & 110

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 1

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	environment	البيئة	rubbish	قمامة
canal	قناة	flood	فيضان	seat	مقعد
drought	جفاف	mountain	جبل	warn (ed)	يحذر
electric	كهربائى (يُدار بالكهرباء)	report	تقرير اخبارى/يقدم تقريرًا	water pollution	تلوث الماء

Lesson 2

bar chart	رسم بيانى شريطى	green energy	الطاقة الخضراء/النظيفة	serious	خطير/جاد
cause (d)	يسبب	line graph	رسم بيانى خطى	temperature	درجة الحرارة
changing world	العالم المتغير	melt (ed)	ينصهر	x-axis	المحور السينى
climate change	التغير المناخى	presentation	عرض تقديمى	y-axis	المحور الصادى
electricity	الكهرباء	recycling	إعادة (التدوير/التصنيع)		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 2

area	منطقة	fire	نار/حريق	recently	حديثًا
change (d) (v/n)	يتغير - يغير/ تغيير	planet	كوكب	user	مُستخدم
ever before	من أى وقت مضى	radio	مذياع/راديو	weather	الطقس

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 1

in the city	فى المدينة	on top of	على قمة
on a radio news programme	فى برنامج إخبارى إذاعى	try to	يحاول أن

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Lesson 1

clean نظيف	dirty/unclean متسخ	dangerous خطير	safe آمن
careful حريص	careless مهمل	more أكثر	less أقل

Adjectives الصفات

attractive جذاب	green أخضر/نظيف للبيئة (لا يلوثها)	old كبير السن/قديم
careful حريص	high مرتفع	polluted ملـوَّث
clean نظيف	hot حار	quiet هادئ
comfortable مريح	important هام	relaxing مريح
dangerous خطير	interesting شيق	serious خطير/جاد
dry جاف	large ضخم/كبير	tall طويل
fast سريع	noisy صاخب	warm دافئ

Places الأماكن

Australia أستراليا (دولة)	Jabal Mousa جبل موسى	Mount Kenya جبل كينيا
Europe أوروبا (قارة)	Jordan الأردن (دولة)	Mount Kilimanjaro جبل كليمنجارو
Iraq العراق (دولة)	Mount Catherine جبل سانت كاترين	Saudi Arabia المملكة العربية السعودية (دولة)

Language Notes

1. **news / أخبار / ice ثلج / جليد** — أسماء لا تعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد
   - The good news is that the ice is not melting as fast as before.

2. **climate (على مدار العام) المناخ / weather (على مدار فترة قصيرة) الطقس**
   - Egypt's climate is fine.
   - This week's weather is good for sailing.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... is hot this week.
   a) whether b) climate c) weather d) feather
2. There .... too much ice on the top of the mountain.
   a) are b) is c) were d) have

Write it right

How to write about the climate

كيفية الكتابة عن المناخ

- Climate change means the change in the world's temperature.
- There are many causes of climate change such as .... (pollution and cutting down trees)
- Climate change causes (الآثار المترتبة عنه).
- We should (ما يجب فعله للحد من الظاهرة).
- We should stop (ما يجب أن نتوقف عن فعله).

Writing tips

Remember to check your writing for mistakes. Make sure that grammar, spelling and punctuation are correct.

تذكر مراجعة فقرتك لاكتشاف الأخطاء. تأكد من صحة القواعد اللغوية والهجاء وعلامات الترقيم.

Example

Climate change

Climate change means the change in the world's climate and temperature. Climate change is causing different kinds of unusual acts in the world's climate. It is the most discussed topic at the moment all over the world. There are many causes for climate change. Firstly, global warming is the main reason for it. Secondly, environment pollution is the main reason for climate change. Thirdly, cutting down trees is another cause of the problem. Climate change causes rise in temperature, floods, drought and ice melting which will seriously affect farming and all living things. We should reduce the bad results of climate change. Planting trees can reduce global warming. We should stop using bad chemicals which can reduce environmental pollution.

Check Point:

Write a paragraph about "Changes of the climate":

"Changes of the climate"

It's very important to look after the environment. ....

....

....

....

Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:
- Would you like to help clean a polluted area around your school? Why?

1. Listen to two reports on a radio news programme for students. Which of the photos on page 54 are they talking about? ***SB page 55***

يخبر (1)
قناة مائية (2)
قمامة (3)
يحذر (4)
كهربى (5)
تلوث الهواء (6)

Girl: Hello, this is Jomana reporting[1] for Student Radio in Cairo. Recently, volunteers who were working to clean a canal[2] say they are finding more and more rubbish in[3] the water. They say the canal is dirtier and more polluted than ever before. They are warning[4] people who live in the city to be more careful about where they put their rubbish to try to help the canal become cleaner.



Boy: This is Karim reporting from Alexandria for Student FM. Today our city started using new electric[5] buses. The buses will mean there is less air pollution[6] in the city, so they are greener and they are also cheaper to run. I spoke to some bus users who said that the new buses were quieter than the old buses and also the seats were more comfortable.



Post-listening question:
- Why do electric bus users like the new buses?

Lesson 2 **Reading Text**

Pre-reading question: - What do you know about climate change?

2. Read the presentation. Does it talk about the problems you discussed in Exercise 1? ***SB page 56***

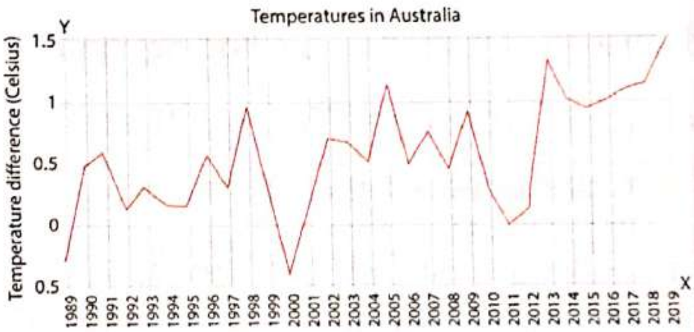
A changing world

Today's presentation[1] is about climate change[2]. This means our planet is changing. Here are two places that are different now.

- عرض تقديمى (1)
- التغير المناخى (2)
- رسم بيانى خطى (3)
- المحور السينى (4)
- المحور الصادى (5)
- درجة الحرارة (6)
- جفاف (7)
- رسم بيانى شريطى (8)
- ينصهر (9)
- منطقة (10)

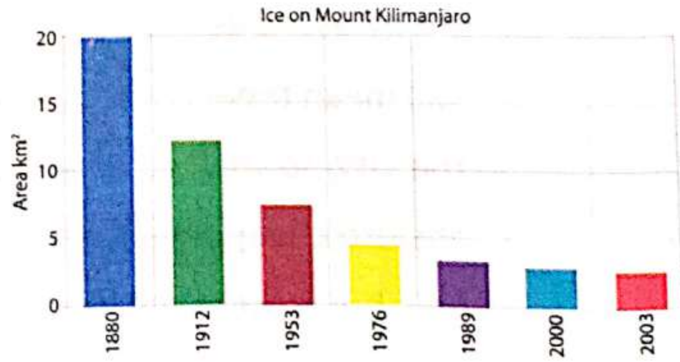
Australia

In this line graph[3], the x-axis[4] shows the year and the y-axis[5] shows the change in temperature[6]. You can see that the climate in Australia is becoming hotter and drier. More droughts[7] mean worse fires than ever before. Climate change means Australia is a more dangerous place to live.



Mount Kilimanjaro

This bar chart[8] shows that warmer and drier weather is melting[9] the ice on top of Africa's highest mountain, Mount Kilimanjaro. You can see that the area[10] of ice is much smaller than 140 years ago. The good news is that the ice is not melting as fast as before. However, the ice is continuing to get smaller.



Post-reading question: - How is bad climate affecting Australia and Mount Kilimanjaro?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's raining heavily this week. I think there will be a serious ....
   a) drought b) fire c) flood d) sinking
2. There are so many cars in big cities and this causes much air ....
   a) pollute b) pollutes c) polluted d) pollution
3. .... cars are better than usual cars. They don't pollute the environment.
   a) Electricity b) Electrical c) Electric d) Electrician
4. Every activity people do can damage or help the .... we live in.
   a) environment b) experiment c) laboratory d) equipment
5. Some countries have serious .... because there isn't any rain for a long time.
   a) emergency b) accidents c) floods d) droughts
6. Egypt has a warm .... all over the year.
   a) climate b) weather c) air d) wind
7. This week, the .... is going to be very hot.
   a) storm b) weather c) breeze d) climate
8. The .... is getting higher because the climate is changing.
   a) environment b) mark c) temperature d) mountain
9. Climate change can cause ice on tops of mountains to ....
   a) dry b) melt c) snow d) rain
10. Many countries try .... things to help the environment.
    a) recycling b) cycling c) damaging d) throwing
11. .... energy doesn't damage the environment. It's good for it.
    a) Fuel b) Green c) Oil d) Petrol
12. Don't leave your .... here. You should take it to the nearest bin.
    a) rubbish b) children c) tools d) experiments
13. People think that beaches are .... because people go there and forget their worries.
    a) relax b) relaxed c) relaxing d) relaxation

Language

1 Comparative adjectives المقارنة بين شيئين

- **We use comparative adjectives to compare two things, people or places.**

نستخدم مقارنة الصفات للمقارنة بين شيئين، شخصين أو مكانين.

تنقسم الصفات إلى:

- صفات قصيرة (Short adjectives) وهى تنطق على مقطع واحد (One syllable):

(high - big - tall - old - wide - nice - hot)

- صفات طويلة (Long adjectives) وهى تنطق على مقطعين أو أكثر (Two or more syllables):

(modern - crowded - amazing - wonderful - interesting)

Comparative adjectives مقارنة الصفات ← لعمل مقارنة بين اثنين مختلفين:

إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد **adj. + er + than + ...**
- Mount Everest is higher **than** Mount Kilimanjaro.
- The Nile is longer **than** the Amazon.

إذا كانت الصفة بها أكثر من مقطع **more أكثر / less أقل + adj. + than ...**
- Cairo is more crowded **than** Aswan.
- A dog is less dangerous **than** a lion.

Read and correct the underlined word:

- The white tablet is expensive than the black one. (....................)

لاحظ

١- الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) نضيف لها (r) فقط للمقارنة بين اثنين:

(large → larger than)

٢- الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (y) وقبلها حرف ساكن نقلب (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er):

(noisy → noisier than)

٣- بعض الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير ثم نضيف (er):

(hot → hotter than)

Read and correct the underlined word:

- The blue bag is heavy than the red one. (....................)

Common Exceptions: استثناءات شائعة:

(good) **better**

- I'm better than Ali at maths.

(bad) **worse**

- Today's weather is worse than yesterday's.

(far) **further**

- Which pyramid is further from the centre of Cairo?

2 (not) as ...... as (ليس) تماما مثل.........

• **We can use (as + adj. + as) to talk about things being the same:**

نستخدم (as + **adj.** + as) عند تساوى اثنين/شيئين فى صفة:

as + adj. + as

- Droughts are as **serious** as floods.
- I think that air pollution is as **dangerous** as water pollution.

not as + adj. + as

• **We can use (not as + adj. + as) to talk about things not being the same:**

نستخدم (not as + **adj.** + as) عند عدم تساوى اثنين/شيئين فى صفة:

- Australia is not as **dry** as Africa.
- A cat is not as **dangerous** as a tiger.

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Pollution in the countryside is bad than pollution in big cities. (....................)
2. Mount Kilimanjaro is not as higher as Mount Everest. (....................)
3. I think Europe is not as dry is Africa. (....................)

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our house is .... comfortable than this hotel.
   a) more b) most c) much d) little
2. Sarah is .... than her sister.
   a) more young b) young c) younger d) youngest
3. Who is ....; you or your sister?
   a) a clever b) cleverer c) cleverly d) clever
4. My car is .... his.
   a) more old than b) older c) older than d) oldest
5. I think London is more beautiful .... New York.
   a) than b) that c) then d) from
6. We can run as .... as they can.
   a) faster b) fast c) fastest d) the fastest
7. The film *Matrix II* was .... interesting as *Matrix I*.
   a) such b) not c) as not d) not as
8. I do not earn as .... money as you do.
   a) much b) more c) less d) little
9. We read .... books than before.
   a) few b) fewer c) less d) many

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Yara's room is <u>small</u> than Leila's. (........................)
2. This tablet is <u>expensive</u> than that one. (........................)
3. Football is more popular <u>then</u> handball. (........................)
4. Today it's not <u>windy as</u> yesterday. (........................)
5. My result in the test is <u>bad</u> than last year's one. (........................)

Lessons 1&2

General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Ali : Hello, Eman. How are you?

Eman : Fine.

Ali : Which is (1)..................................; the laptop or the computer?

Eman : The (2).................................. is bigger.

Ali : Is the screen on the computer the same as the one on the laptop?

Eman : No, the screen of the computer is not (3).................................. small as the laptop.

Ali : What (4).................................. the price?

Eman : The price is the same. The laptop is similar to the computer in price.

Ali : Which is heavier?

Eman : (5).................................. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. The .... in Australia is becoming hotter and drier.
   a) climate b) weather c) whether d) air
2. More .... mean worse fires than ever before.
   a) floods b) floats c) droughts d) draughts
3. Drier weather is .... the ice on the top of the mountains.
   a) sinking b) trying c) leaving d) melting
4. Water .... became much more worse than the last ten years.
   a) pollution b) population c) station d) decision
5. Polluted food .... you to become ill or sick.
   a) makes b) spends c) feels d) causes
6. Droughts are as .... as floods.
   a) safe b) amazing c) serious d) relaxing
7. .... energy is good for the environment.
   a) Fuel b) Green c) Oil d) Petrol

8. Cars are .... than motorbikes.
   a) safe   b) safer   c) more safer   d) safest
9. Sharks are .... than lions.
   a) dangerous   b) more dangerous
   c) much dangerous   d) most dangerous
10. He is .... than he used to be last year.
   a) as fat   b) fattest   c) fatter   d) fat

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. Our town is attractive than Manchester. (........................)
2. A train is slow than a plane. (........................)
3. My aunt is not as older as my mother. (........................)
4. Sarah's hair is not as long than Dalia's. (........................)

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

6

"The weather in your country"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

25

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
......../30			......../25			......../55		
(1-14)	(15-24)	(25-30)	(1-12)	(13-20)	(21-25)	(1-25)	(26-45)	(46-55)

Notes

....
....
....
....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58-60   WB pages 111 & 112

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 3

black honey	عسل أسود	introduce (d)	يقدم	position	مكانة/موقع
canal	قناة مائية	locate (d)	يقع (جغرافيًا)	pray (ed)	يصلى
cotton	قطن	monuments	آثار	sweets	حلوى
delicious	لذيذ/شهي	mosque	مسجد	title	عنوان (كتاب)
		Directions	**الاتجاهات**		
east	شرق	west	غرب	north-west	شمال غرب
north	شمال	in the north of	فى شمال	south-east	جنوب شرق
south	جنوب	north-east	شمال شرق	south-west	جنوب غرب

Lesson 4

damage (d)	يدمر/يتلف	pet	حيوان أليف	respect (ed)	يحترم
introduction	مقدمة	podcast	بث إذاعى	scuba diving	رياضة الغطس
metal can	علبة معدنية	prize	جائزة	the Red Sea Coast	ساحل البحر الأحمر
Ministry of Tourism	وزارة السياحة	produce (d)	ينتج	wildlife	الحياة البرية
owner	مالك	protect (ed)	يحمى		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 3

home city	موطن	oil	بترول/زيت	sugar	سكر
local area	المنطقة المحلية	potatoes	بطاطس	wheat	قمح
		Places	**الأماكن**		
Al-Ahmadi Mosque	مسجد الأحمدى	Luxor	الأقصر	Niagara Falls	شلالات نياجرا
Aswan	أسوان	Minya	المنيا	Port Said	بور سعيد

Suez السويس	the Nile نهر النيل	the Suez Canal قناة السويس
Tanta طنطا	the Pyramids of Giza أهرامات الجيزة	
the Great Wall of China سور الصين العظيم	the Red Sea البحر الأحمر	

Lesson 4

believe (d) يعتقد/يصدق	hotel فندق	topic موضوع
desert صحراء	island جزيرة	tourism company شركة سياحة
funny مضحك	nature reserve محمية طبيعية	travel company شركة سفر
green hotel فندق صديق للبيئة	presenter مذيع/مقدم برنامج	water sports رياضات مائية
Animals and birds		**حيوانات وطيور**
camel جمل	coral reef شعب مرجانية	mouse/mice فأر/فئران
chicken دجاجة	dolphin دولفين	turtle سلحفاة بحرية

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 3

"be" located تقع (جغرافيًا)	catch ▶ fish يصطاد سمكًا

Lesson 4

as a result كنتيجة لذلك	make ▶ notes يدون ملاحظات
as usual كالمعتاد	so that لكي

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 3

by the Suez Canal عن طريق قناة السويس	famous/known for مشهور بـ	from around the world من جميع أنحاء العالم
connected to متصل/مرتبط بـ	focus of يركز لـ	spotlight on تسليط الضوء على

Lesson 4

along the river على امتداد النهر	example of مثال لـ	pay for يدفع ثمن ...
close to قريب من	look after يعتني بـ	stop from يمنع من

Conjugations of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
Lesson 3			
catch	يمسك/يصطاد	caught	caught
grow	يزرع/ينمو	grew	grown
Lesson 4			
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

Definitions التعريفات

Lesson 3		
canal	قناة مائية	a long area of water made for ships or boats
cotton	قطن	a plant used for making clothes
locate	يقع (جغرافيًا)	find the position of something
mosque	مسجد	a building where people can pray

Language Notes

fish أسماك (تعامل معاملة الجمع حينما نقصد بها أنواعًا عديدة من الأسماك)

- A lot of fish **are** caught in the sea near Port Said.

fish سمك (تعامل معاملة المفرد حينما نقصد السمك كطعام)

- The fish mum made for lunch **was** delicious.

Write it right

How to write about your home city

كيفية الكتابة عن مدينتك

- I come from a beautiful city called (اسم المدينة).
- It has a lot of (ما بها من أماكن جميلة).
- People in my city are very (صفة).
- It is located in ... (موقعها الجغرافى).
- It's (صفة) in summer.
- Many tourists visit it because (السبب).

Writing tips

Try reading your written task out loud to make sure it makes sense.

حاول قراءة مهمتك الكتابية بصوت عالٍ لتتأكد أن لها معنًى.

To : Paul
From : Nader
Subject : My home city

Hello Paul,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about my home city. I come from a beautiful city called Hurghada on the Red Sea. First of all, it's very green and has many beaches and mountains. My home city is not polluted and the people are very friendly. It also has a small city centre area and you can find many shops and restaurants, for example sea food restaurants and supermarkets. My home city is on the coast, so there are many boats and ships. You can see turtles there. There are many fishermen around, so you can eat many kinds of cheap fish. It's very hot in the summer and warm in the winter. There are many parks and museums in my home city. Many tourists visit my home city in the winter time because it has lovely weather. You should come and visit it one day.

Write soon.

Nader

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Jack to tell him about Egypt. Your name is Ahmed.

Lesson 3 — Reading and Speaking

Pre-reading question: - Where's your home city located?

1. Look at the photos and titles in the article below. Then ask and answer the questions in pairs. ***SB page 58***

Spotlight on ... Port Said



- Port Said is located(1) in the north-east(2) of Egypt.
- The city is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world.
- Port Said is connected to(3) Suez by the Suez Canal.
- Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.

Spotlight on ... Tanta



- Tanta is located in the north of Egypt.
- Lots of cotton is grown in the area.
- The city is known for its delicious(4) sweets.
- Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi Mosque is visited by thousands of people every year.

تقع (جغرافيا) (1)
شمال شرق (2)
متصلة بـ (3)
لذيذ/شهى (4)

Lesson 3 — Reading Text

4. Complete the sentences with the present simple passive form of the verbs in brackets. ***SB page 59***



My home city(1) is Minya. It **is located** near the Nile. Lots of food **is grown** in the local area like potatoes, wheat and sugar. The city **is known** for its delicious "black honey(2)".

The honey **is made** from sugar. Many ancient monuments(3) and buildings **are found** in the city.

My city is very beautiful and interesting!

موطن (1)
عسل أسود (2)
آثار (3)

Post-reading question: - What's Minya known for?

Lesson 4

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:
- Mention three different popular places for tourists in Egypt.

2. Listen to the introduction to the podcast and choose the correct topic.

SB page 60

Presenter : Today on Environment Matters, we're looking at tourism[1] on the Red Sea Coast[2]. Salma Fawzy from the Ministry of Tourism[3] is here to talk about how we can have tourism in Egypt that doesn't damage the environment[4].

Hello, Salma. You're interested in helping both tourism and the environment, is that right?

السياحة (1)
ساحل البحر الأحمر (2)
وزارة السياحة (3)
البيئة (4)
الحياة البرية (5)
محميات طبيعية (6)

Salma : Exactly. Tourism is very important to Egypt. Our beautiful coast is visited by people from around the world - which is great! But the coast also has coral reefs and lots of important wildlife[5]. The coral reefs are important for our sharks, dolphins and turtles.



Presenter : So, what are you doing to protect the environment?

Salma : Well, the islands on the Red Sea Coast are all nature reserves[6]. We are also working with hotels and travel companies. We have rules for new buildings to make them greener. We also give prizes to companies that are the best at looking after the environment.

Presenter : Good idea!

Salma : We also think that it's important to teach tourists about how to look after our special environment when they are on the beaches or doing water sports like scuba diving.

Post-listening question:
- How can we have tourism in Egypt that doesn't damage the environment?

Lesson 4

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What's meant by green energy?

3. Complete the text about three hotels with the correct form of these verbs:
WB page 112







The North Hotel

The North Hotel is located on a lovely beach and every year, the hotel is visited by more and more tourists. However, the hotel owner[(1)] said that last year, there were not as many turtles[(2)] on the beach as usual. As a result, the hotel is helping the turtles. Parts of the beach are closed to tourists so that turtles are safe. And at night, when the turtles leave their eggs in the sand, the hotel workers stop any tourists from visiting the beach.

The South Hotel

The South Hotel is near the coast, and every year, it takes tourists scuba diving[(3)]. However, workers on the boats believe that coral reefs[(4)] are often damaged by scuba divers.

The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral reefs. Now some of the money that tourists pay for the boat trips is used to help protect the coral reefs.

The East Hotel

The East Hotel is very new. Only green energy[(5)] from the sun and wind is used at the hotel. The hotel also produces[(6)] very little rubbish[(7)]; most of it is recycled. All the fruit and vegetables at the hotel restaurant are grown on local farms, and the people working at the hotel are all from the local villages.

(1) مالك
(2) سلاحف بحرية
(3) الغطس
(4) الشعاب المرجانية
(5) الطاقة الخضراء (النظيفة)
(6) ينتج
(7) قمامة

Post-reading question:
- Which of the three hotels is helping the environment best?

Values

1. Why is it important to look after the planet?
2. What do you do to try to help the planet?
3. Do you think that there are more things you could do to help the environment? How could your family help? What about your school?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My home town is .... on the coast. It's in the south-east.
   a) closed   b) positioned   c) located   d) lied
2. Mohamed Salah, the famous sports person, is .... for his kindness.
   a) opened   b) known   c) closed   d) spent
3. My computer is .... to the internet, so I search easily for anything I want.
   a) contacted   b) communicated   c) tied   d) connected
4. Many people like to visit Port Said to .... fish.
   a) feed   b) spend   c) catch   d) hold
5. I visited Al-Ahmadi Mosque in Tanta and .... in it.
   a) dived   b) fished   c) prayed   d) played
6. Egypt has wonderful ancient .... which tourists like to visit.
   a) monuments   b) experiments   c) developments   d) movements
7. Most fruit and vegetables are .... in the local area.
   a) fed   b) grown   c) lived   d) located
8. Minya has delicious black .... made from sugar.
   a) honey   b) rose   c) flower   d) cotton
9. Bread is made from ....
   a) cotton   b) potatoes   c) sugar   d) wheat
10. A .... is a long area of water made for ships or boats.
    a) coast   b) park   c) canal   d) beach
11. .... is a plant used for making clothes.
    a) Cotton   b) Sugar   c) Wheat   d) Flower
12. Mr Taha is famous for his .... stories. We all laugh a lot when we hear them.
    a) boring   b) ugly   c) expensive   d) funny
13. .... should look after the environment when they visit a country.
    a) Tourism   b) Tourists   c) Guides   d) Owners
14. Farmers plant a lot of orange trees .... the river.
    a) a long   b) along   c) long   d) longer

Language

The present simple passive المضارع البسيط المبنى للمجهول

- We use the passive form when we don't know who does something.

- نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عند عدم معرفة الفاعل.

Form التكوين

	Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
Present simple	I/ We/ You/ They/ اسم جمع + inf. He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + inf. + s • People grow lots of cotton in the area. • They make black honey from sugar.	مفعول + (am - is - are) + التصريف الثالث للفعل (P.P) • Lots of cotton is **grown** in the area. • Black honey is **made** from sugar.

Negative النفى

Object (مفعول) + (am/ is/ are) + not + P.P (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

- In my home city, we don't grow rice. (Active)
- Rice isn't grown in my home city. (Passive)

Question السؤال

(Is/ Are) + subject + past participle?

- ونكوّن السؤال بوضع (verb to be) قبل فاعل الجملة.

- Do you grow much rice in your country? (Active)
- Is much rice grown in your country? (Passive)

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Does Minya known for black honey? (..................)
2. Where is your home city locates? (..................)
3. We are played football every day. (..................)

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... the thief caught by the police officer?
   a) Is b) Has c) Does d) Will
2. In summer, more ice cream .... than in winter.
   a) ate b) eats c) is eating d) is eaten
3. The flowers are watered .... my brother every morning.
   a) of b) at c) with d) by
4. This writer's articles .... by many people.
   a) read b) are read c) are reading d) reading
5. German .... as a second language in our school.
   a) is speaking b) speaking c) speaks d) is spoken
6. Petrol .... from oil.
   a) making b) made c) is made d) makes
7. The walls aren't .... by my mother.
   a) painted b) painting c) paint d) paints
8. My room .... every day.
   a) was cleaned b) is cleaning c) is cleaned d) cleans
9. A lot of useful information .... on the internet.
   a) find b) finds c) is found d) are found

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Jane <u>drives</u> to school by her father every day. (....................)
2. Milk is <u>keeping</u> in the fridge. (....................)
3. <u>Do</u> famous places visited by tourists? (....................)
4. Rooms <u>is cleaning</u> in this hotel every day. (....................)
5. Clothes aren't <u>sell</u> in that shop. (....................)
6. Who <u>does</u> your food cooked by? (....................)

Lessons 3&4

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

1. What is your home city?
   a) Malaysia. b) Minya. c) India. d) Africa.
2. What is it famous for?
   a) Bread. b) Cheese.
   c) Eggs and bread. d) Black honey.
3. Which plants are grown there?
   a) Cotton. b) Cotton and sugar.
   c) Potatoes and cotton. d) Potatoes and sugar.
4. Where is your city found?
   a) Near the Nile. b) Far from the Nile.
   c) Near the canal. d) Far from the canal.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. We should stop tourists .... damaging the environment.
   a) to b) from c) at d) by
2. Tourists, ... around the world, visit the Red Sea every year.
   a) to b) from c) at d) by
3. The wildlife on the Red Sea Coast is all nature ....
   a) reserves b) laboratories c) monuments d) deserts
4. Owners of hotels should .... the environment.
   a) protect b) attack c) take d) damage
5. The hotel is located .... a lovely beach.
   a) on b) out c) of d) in
6. The few turtles on the beach are in danger. As a ...., the hotel is helping them.
   a) cause b) result c) reason d) mark
7. Workers on the boats .... that coral reefs are damaged by scuba divers.
   a) believe b) respect c) protect d) collect

8. Exercise 16 is .... than exercise 15.
   a) easy b) easier c) little easy d) easiest
9. Every Monday, Dina .... articles for a famous newspaper.
   a) writes b) is writing c) is written d) writing
10. The new museum is .... from Cairo than the old museum.
   a) far b) the furthest c) furthest d) further

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. At home my mother is always busiest than my father. (..................)
2. China is much bigger then Britain. (..................)
3. The dogs are feeding by Farouk. (..................)
4. Nowadays, a lot of computers made in Korea. (..................)

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Hisham to tell him about your city. Your name is Samy.

6

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

24

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
...... / 30			...... / 24			...... / 54		
☹	😐	☺	☹	😐	☺	☹	😐	☺
(1-15)	(16-24)	(25-30)	(1-11)	(12-19)	(20-24)	(1-26)	(27-45)	(46-54)

Notes

....
....
....
....

Lessons 5&6

SB pages 61 & 62 WB pages 113 & 114

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Lesson 5

diagram	رسم توضيحى/بيانى	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام	solve (d)	يحل
burn (burnt)	يحرق	solution	حل	vote (d)	يدلى بصوته/يُصَوِّت

Lesson 6

aim (to)	يهدف (إلى)	gas	غاز	lead to (n/v-ing)	يؤدى إلى
city centre	وسط البلد	global	عالمى	remind (ed)	يُذَكِّر
collect (ed)	يجمع	importance (of)	أهمية (لـ)	riverbank	ضفة النهر
event	حدث	including	مشتملًا على/متضمنًا	tonnes	أطنان

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

Lesson 6

Amsterdam	أمستردام (مدينة)	coloured	ملون	Netherlands	هولندا (دولة)
billion	مليار	Germany	ألمانيا (دولة)	South Korea	كوريا الجنوبية (دولة)

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

Lesson 5

give ▶ suggestions	يعطى اقتراحات	respond to ▶ suggestions	يرد على اقتراحات
make ▶ suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات	solve ▶ a problem	يحل مشكلة

Lesson 6

Global Recycling Day اليوم العالمى لإعادة التصنيع

Prepositions حروف الجر

Lesson 6

a bag of rubbish	كيس قمامة	clean up	ينظف
careful with	حريص على	part of	جزء من

Write it right

How to write about "recycling"

كيفية الكتابة عن إعادة التصنيع

- Recycling is very important.
- Recycling is making old things into new ones.
- It's good for the environment.
- It helps in reducing air and water pollution.
- We must think of reusing old things before throwing them away.

Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns in your writing. There should be both long and short sentences.

- استخدم نماذج متنوعة فى الجمل. يجب أن تكون هناك جملًا طويلة وأخرى قصيرة فى الفقرة.

Example

Recycling

Recycling is important in today's world if we want to keep this planet clean for our future grandchildren. It is good for the environment because we are making new products from the old products which aren't used anymore. Recycling begins at home. If you are not throwing away any of your old products and instead reusing them for something new, then you are recycling. Recycling can benefit your community and the environment. It helps in reducing air and water pollution. Try to buy products that are made from recycled materials. There are some examples of paper, metal and plastic. Before throwing anything, think about how to reuse it.

Check Point:

Write a paragraph about "Recycling":

"Recycling"

It's important to recycle old things. ....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 5 — Listening Text

3. Listen and check your answers.

SB page 61



Aya : The problem is that we all use too much water.

Reem : That's true. So, how can we use less water?

Aya : Well, why don't we try recycling water?

Reem : How could we do that?

Aya : For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.

Reem : That's an interesting idea! The plants would like that!

Lesson 5 — Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- How is house rubbish different to school rubbish?

1. Listen to Dina talking about her school and answer the questions.

WB page 113



Dina: Our school project this week is to think about rubbish at school. In our school, we have a rubbish bin in every room. The students are very good and they always put their rubbish in the bins. At the moment, the rubbish is collected every week and goes to a special place in the city. But when we look inside the bins, we can see that most of the rubbish is made of paper or plastic. We can recycle a lot of this rubbish. So now, before students put things in the rubbish bin, we ask them to think: Can I recycle that? If the answer is yes, they can now put it in a special bin so it can be used again.

Post-listening question: - Do you think Dina's school is clean? Give reasons.

Lesson 5 **Listening Text**

Pre-listening question:

- Does your school produce plastic rubbish? Where does it come from?

3. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2, then role-play the dialogue.

WB page 113



Dina: Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin. The problem is that we use too many of them.

Leila: How can we stop people using them?

Dina: Why don't we ask people to use them again?

Leila: How could we do that?

Dina: People could take home the bottles, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.

Leila: That's an interesting idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.

Post-listening question:

- What was Dina's solution to the plastic problem at school?

Lesson 6

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:
- How can we help make the environment better?

2. Read the article and answer the questions: ***SB page 62***

Students help to clean river

By Khadeeja El-Maghrabi



Last weekend, ten students from Class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank(1) near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish(2). Their teacher, Mr Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish.

"There were lots of plastic bags and bottles," he said. "We even found an old shoe!"

One of the students said, "It was great to clean the riverbank, but we need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish. Rubbish in the river damages the wildlife(3).

Well done to the volunteers(4)!

(1) ضفة النهر
(2) قمامة
(3) الحياة البرية
(4) المتطوعون

Post-reading question:
- Why do we need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father always asks us to .... suggestions about how to spend the weekend.
   a) make b) buy
   c) take d) borrow
2. Adults are the people who are able to .... and choose the person they want.
   a) vote b) sound
   c) avoid d) voice
3. My mother always tells me how to .... my problems alone.
   a) attack b) kill
   c) solve d) collect
4. My class decided that we could .... bottles to recycle them.
   a) drop b) throw
   c) attract d) collect
5. .... is the way we reuse old things to become new again.
   a) Cycling b) Recycling
   c) Throwing d) Dropping
6. Climate change is a .... problem that we should care about.
   a) community b) national
   c) local d) global
7. People in my local area decided to clean up the .... to reduce water pollution.
   a) garden b) park
   c) riverbank d) street
8. My mother always advises me to be careful .... my money.
   a) at b) with
   c) under d) to
9. Rubbish in the river .... the wildlife.
   a) damages b) stores
   c) protects d) produces
10. Mr Said asked us to write a paragraph about the .... of recycling.
    a) different b) difference
    c) important d) importance

Speaking

Making suggestions تقديم اقتراحات

The problem is that we use too much water.
المشكلة أننا نستخدم كميات كبيرة جدًا من المياه.

That's true. هذا حقيقي.

Why don't we try recycling water? لما لا نجرب إعادة تدوير المياه؟

That's an interesting idea! إنها فكرة شيقة!

For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.
على سبيل المثال، يمكننا استخدام مياه الغسيل لنروى بها النباتات.

How can/could we do that? كيف يمكننا فعل ذلك؟

We can see what the teacher thinks. يمكننا رؤية ما يفكر به المعلم.

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

Aya : The problem is that we all use too much water.
Reem : I (1)................................ . We should do something about that.
Aya : Certainly. We could use less water.
Reem : That's (2)................................ . So, how can we use less water?
Aya : Well, (3)................................ don't we try recycling water?
Reem : Sorry, I don't know what you mean.
Aya : We could use water twice.
Reem : (4)................................ could we do that?
Aya : For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.
Reem : That's an interesting (5)................................! The plants would like that.

Lessons 5 & 6 General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Dina : Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin.

Leila : What's the problem with that?

Dina : The (1).. is that we use too many of them.

Leila : What can we do with that problem?

Dina : We (2).. stop people using them.

Leila : How can we stop people using them?

Dina : Why (3).. we ask people to use them again?

Leila : (4).. could we do that?

Dina : People could take the bottles home, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.

Leila : (5).. an interesting idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. When there is too much smoke coming out from factories, it .... air pollution.
   a) causes b) stops c) protects d) saves
2. A .... always comes after heavy rain.
   a) break b) drought c) flood d) pollution
3. The price of the room in this hotel is 500 pounds a night .... breakfast.
   a) introducing b) paying c) including d) producing
4. Most big shops and supermarkets are found in the city ....
   a) corner b) centre c) border d) wall
5. My mother often .... me to get my school bag ready before I sleep.
   a) reminds b) remembers c) writes d) shows
6. Don't throw your bottles and other things. You can .... them.
   a) redo b) finish c) reuse d) stay

7 We should always clean the river because it became ....

a) pollution b) polluted c) produced d) production

8 This flower is .... beautiful than that one.

a) more b) much c) little d) far

9 How much paper .... each year?

a) recycles b) recycled c) is recycling d) is recycled

10 The hotel rooms .... daily.

a) are clean b) are cleaned c) is cleaned d) clean

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1 Dad's car is much fast than mine. (......................)

2 He thinks this test was difficult than the last one. (......................)

3 Furniture is making by carpenters. (......................)

4 Nowadays cars repair by machines. (......................)

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: WB

6

"Recycling at home"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

25

Assess Your Progress

Dictation			General Exercises			Total Marks		
.... / 20			.... / 25			.... / 45		
(1-9)	(10-15)	(16-20)	(1-12)	(13-20)	(21-25)	(1-22)	(23-39)	(40-45)

Notes

....

....

....

....

Video Script

Egypt has a dry climate[1]. This means there isn't much rain.

Every year, about 17 centimetres of rain falls in the north of the country.

It is drier in the south and in the deserts. There is only about 0.25 centimetres of rain in Aswan every year.

Egypt is also hot. It's sometimes 40 Centigrade[2] or hotter in Cairo.

In other places, the temperature[3] is higher than that. In Luxor it can be 44 Centigrade… and the desert is even hotter.

The people and animals that live in the desert need to protect themselves from the sun.

This man is wearing a jellabiya[4]. He is kept cool during the day by this traditional item[5] of clothing[6].

And this is a fennec fox[7]. Its large ears help to keep it cool.

It can be colder in the desert when the sun starts to go down[8].

That's why you only see some animals, like this caracal[9], in the evening when it isn't as hot as in the afternoon.

But, like in many other countries around the world, Egypt's climate is changing. It's hotter today than it was sixty years ago.

And the rain is heavier than it used to be. Houses and buildings are damaged by these heavy rains[10].

We need to work together to protect the environment, our climate and our world.

0:00

(1) مناخ جاف
(2) مئوية
(3) درجة الحرارة
(4) جلابية
(5) عنصر/نوع
(6) ملبس
(7) ثعلب صحراوى
(8) تغرب الشمس
(9) كاراكال
(10) أمطار غزيرة

Unit 6 Review

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

aim (to + inf.)	يهدف (إلى)	gas	غاز	protect (ed)	يحمى
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	global	عالمى	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير/تصنيع
bar chart	رسم بيانى شريطى	green energy	الطاقة الخضراء/النظيفة	recycling	إعادة التدوير/التصنيع
black honey	عسل أسود	importance (of)	أهمية (لـ)	remind (ed)	يُذَكِر
canal	قناة مائية	including	مشتملًا/متضمنًا	respect (ed)	يحترم
cause (d)	يسبب	introduce (d)	يقدم	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
changing world	العالم المتغير	introduction	مقدمة	riverbank	ضفة النهر
city centre	وسط البلد	lead to (n/ing)	يؤدى إلى	rubbish	قمامة
clean up (ed)	ينظف	line graph	رسم بيانى خطى	scuba diving	رياضة الغطس
climate change	التغير المناخى	locate (d)	يحدد موقعًا/مكانًا	seat	مقعد
coast	ساحل	melt (ed)	ينصهر	serious	خطير/جاد
collect (ed)	يجمع	metal can	علبة معدنية	solution	حل
cotton	قطن	monuments	آثار	solve (d)	يحل
damage (d)	يدمر/يتلف	mosque	مسجد	sweets	حلوى
delicious	لذيذ/شهى	mountain	جبل	temperature	درجة الحرارة
diagram	رسم توضيحى/بيانى	owner	مالك	title	عنوان (كتاب)
drought	جفاف	pet	حيوان أليف	tonnes	أطنان
electric	كهربائى	podcast	بث إذاعى	vote (d)	يصوت على
electricity	الكهرباء	position	مكانة	water pollution	تلوث المياه
environment	البيئة	pray (ed)	يصلى	wildlife	الحياة البرية
event	حدث	presentation	عرض تقديمى	x-axis	المحور السينى
flood	فيضان	produce (d)	ينتج	y-axis	المحور الصادى

Language

1 (not) as ...... as

- Droughts are as **serious** as floods.
- I think that air pollution is as **dangerous** as water pollution.
- Australia is not as **dry** as Africa.

2 The present simple passive

Object + is/are + P.P

- Lots of cotton is **grown** in the area.

Object + isn't/aren't + P.P

- Rice isn't **grown** in my home city.

Is/Are + object + P.P?

- Is much rice **grown** in your country?

Speaking

Making suggestions

- Why don't we try recycling water?
  - That's an interesting idea!
- We could use the water from washing to water the plants.
  - I'm not sure about that.

Al-Azhar Corner

Based on Unit 6 أسئلة خاصة بأبنائنا طلبة الأزهر الشريف

1) Finish the following two-mini dialogues:

A) **Anwar** : Where are most mobile phones made?

Ali : ....

B) **Sawsan** : ....?

Samar : My father is older than my mother.

2) Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. How can you	**a)** to be more careful with rubbish.
2. We need to teach people	**b)** than Jordan.
3. When ice warms,	**c)** there is often flood.
4. Egypt is bigger	**d)** clean the riverbank?
5. When there is not enough rain,	**e)** there is often drought.
	f) it melts.

Answers: **1.** (   ) **2.** (   ) **3.** (   ) **4.** (   ) **5.** (   )

3) Write an email to your friend Hassan to tell him about water pollution. Your name is Salah.

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 6

Cumulative Exercises

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

1. Where is ice always found?
   a) In Antarctica. b) In Europe. c) In Africa. d) In Australia.
2. How many metres of ice are there in some places?
   a) Less than 4,500 metres. b) 4,500 metres.
   c) 5,400 metres. d) More than 4,500 metres.
3. How old is the bottom of this ice?
   a) 200,000 years old. b) More than 100,000 years old.
   c) 300,000 years old. d) 500,000 years old.
4. How many countries are there in Antarctica?
   a) One. b) No. c) Seven. d) Eleven.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Hany : Hello, Ali.
Ali : Hi, Hany.
Hany : I can't sleep at night. What can I do?
Ali : Why (1).. you read a book or a story?
Hany : I tried reading, but it wasn't good.
Ali : You (2).. drink some milk.
Hany : I don't (3).. it.
Ali : So. It's a (4).. idea to relax completely before you go to bed.
Hany : That's (5).. .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

6

The celebration of Earth Day began in the city of San Francisco and was started by their ruler John McConnell. The first Earth Day celebration was on March 21, which was the first day of spring. Earth Day is important because it reminds us to stop and look at the problems of our environment. This causes health problems to people living on Earth. Each of us must do our part to recycle and reuse products instead of throwing them away. Rubbish is found everywhere, it is taking up valuable land and space we need for homes and

farms. Earth Day is now celebrated each year on April 22nd. Schools around the world take part in making sure that our world is a cleaner place. Students volunteer to pick up rubbish at their schools, homes, and streets to do their part in helping our environment.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Earth Day begin?

   ....

2. Who requested this celebration of our Earth?

   ....

3. What is the importance of Earth Day?

   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "their" refers to ....

   a) products b) students
   c) landfills d) streets

5. What does Earth Day help us to do?

   a) Think of ways to recycle materials.
   b) Pick up trash.
   c) Clean up our water sources.
   d) All of these.

6. What can students do to help celebrate Earth Day?

   a) Have a party for it.
   b) Sing songs.
   c) Pick up trash in their community.
   d) None of these.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. Please take your .... home, don't leave it in the park. WB

   a) grass b) rubbish c) jewellery d) music

2. It was raining for days and then there was a ...., so people used boats to leave their houses! WB

   a) cloud b) storm c) drought d) flood

3. There are a lot of cars in the city, so the air .... is very bad. WB

   a) pollution b) polluted c) polluting d) pollute

4. There was no rain for months this winter, so now there is a .... WB
 a) cloud b) storm c) drought d) flood
5. Not many fish live in the river because it is very .... WB
 a) pollution b) polluted c) polluting d) pollute
6. The Egyptians opened the Suez .... in 1869.
 a) Nile b) Canal c) River d) Sea
7. What's the .... like today?
 a) climate b) weather c) whether d) air
8. A train is not as .... as a plane. WB
 a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) more fast
9. The environment .... by many scientists.
 a) studies b) studied c) is studying d) is studied
10. Coffee .... in Brazil and Colombia.
 a) is grown b) grown c) are grown d) grow

5 Read and correct the underlined words: 4

1. The car doesn't washed every week. (........................)
2. TV is watched in the evening? (........................)
3. Where does English spoken? (........................)
4. The pollution in the countryside isn't as bad the pollution in cities. (........................)

6 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Menna to tell her about how to help the environment. Your name is Asmaa. 6

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

35

Unit 6 Research Projects

Work in groups and prepare a presentation about climate change in your country.



(1) Use the internet or a book to find a line graph or bar chart that shows information about the climate in a country or city.

(2) Use the information to prepare a presentation to the class. Think about the following:

- What do the x-axis and y-axis show?
- What comparisons and conclusions can you make?

(3) Find photos or pictures to go with your presentation and use some of the following expressions:

- Today's presentation is about ......
- In this line graph, you can see that ......
- This bar chart shows that .....

(4) Present the project to the class. Everyone in the group should speak.

Research steps

1 A suitable title
2 An introduction
3 Main ideas and information
4 The results
5 Resources

ALADWAA OASIS

What can we do to stop that kind of pollution?



1 ....

....

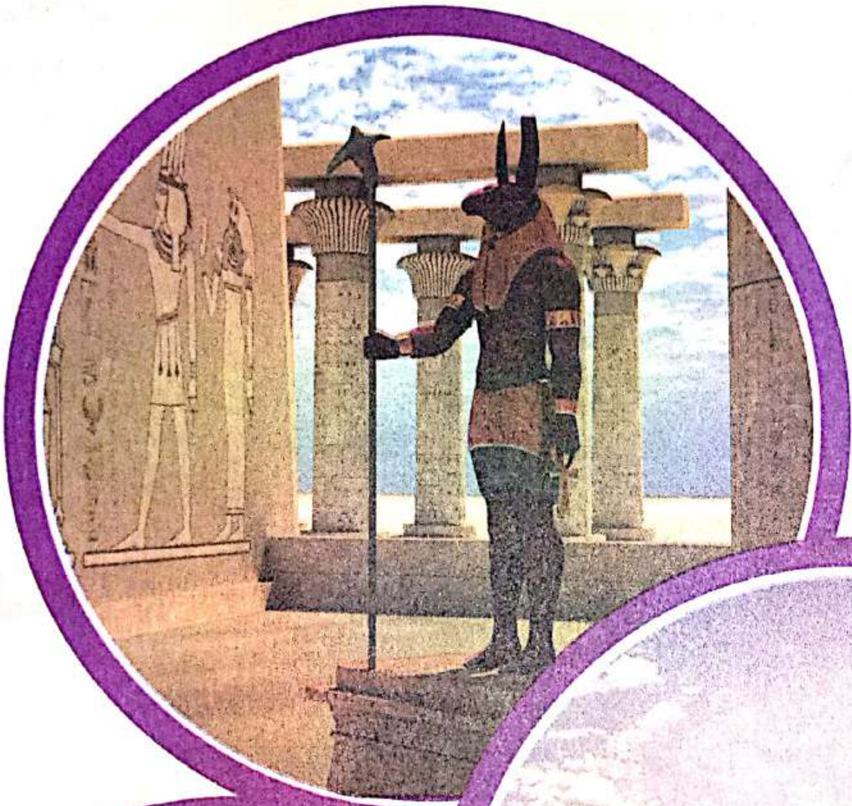
2 ....

....

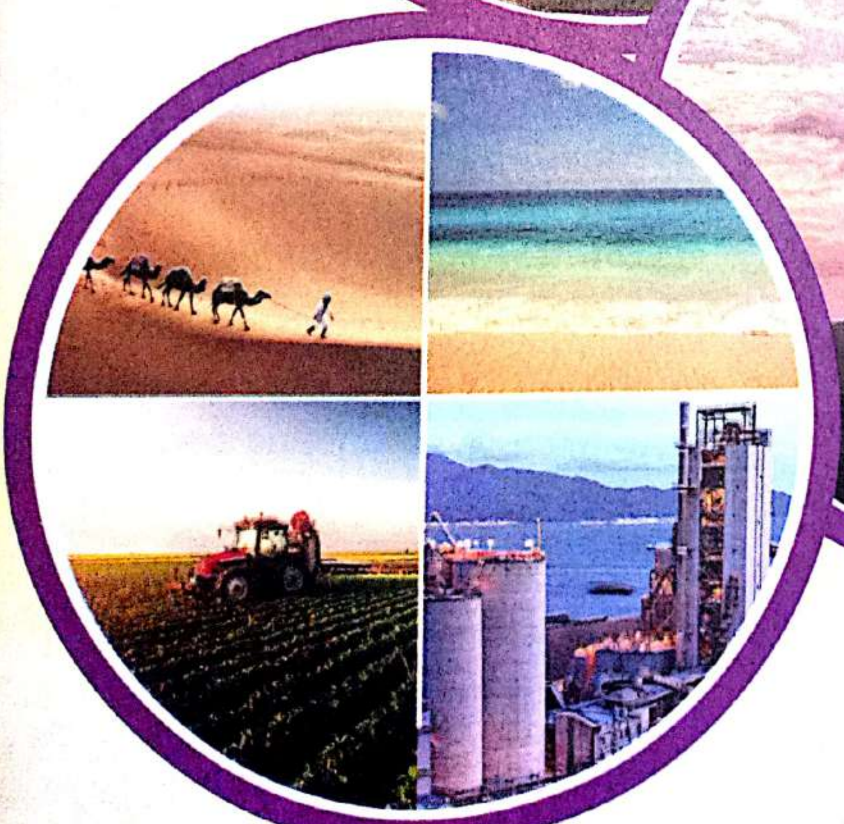
3 ....

....

Review B Units 4, 5 & 6







Tapescript

Review B

SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 116 & 117

Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Do you like visiting historic places? Why?

1. Listen to the telephone conversation. What place is the teacher calling and why?

SB page 64



Mrs. Saki : Good afternoon, Luxor Museum, how can I help you?

Mr El-Baz : Hello, I'm a teacher and I want to bring my class to visit the museum next week. Can you tell me what time you are open, please?

Mrs Saki : Of course. We're open every day from 9 am to 2 pm and then 5 pm to 9 pm.

Mr El-Baz : Can I buy tickets at the museum?

Mrs Saki : Yes, certainly. Or you can buy them online before your visit.

Mr El-Baz : How much are the tickets?

Mrs Saki : They're 120 pounds for adults and 60 pounds for children and students.

Mr El-Baz : OK, thank you. Can you tell me where the museum is exactly?

Mrs Saki : It's located in the north of Luxor on Corniche El Nil.

Mr El-Baz : Thank you so much for your help!

Mrs Saki : You're welcome. Bye!

Post-listening question:

- How much are the tickets?

Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:
- What do you think of online shopping?

1. Listen and match the three telephone conversations 1–3 with the places the callers want to visit a–c. *WB page 116*

Narrator 1



Woman 1 : Good morning, how can I help you?

Man 1 : Hello, I'd like to know some of the things I can see and do if I visit today.

Woman 1 : Yes, you can usually see lots of wildlife, or you could go scuba diving.

Narrator 2

Man 2 : Hello, how can I help you today?

Man 3 : Good morning. Can you tell me how much a ticket costs?

Man 2 : Of course. Adults are 160 pounds and children are 80 pounds.

Man 3 : Can I buy the tickets online?

Man 2 : Yes, and the tickets are cheaper on the museum website, too.

Narrator 3

Woman 2 : Good afternoon, how can I help?

Woman 3 : I'd like to know what time you close today.

Woman 4 : Certainly. We close at 3 pm, so if you want to visit the castle today, you'll have to get here soon.

Woman 3 : Thank you for your help.

Post-listening question:
- Which one of the three places would you like to visit?

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - Do you like visiting ancient places?

3. Read the text quickly. Which objects did Hamid see at the museum? ***SB page 64***

A trip to Luxor Museum *By Hamid*



Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. The museum is further from my home than our school. We were travelling for a long time! We arrived at 10.30 am. As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big statues. My favourite was the statue of Ramses II. There were also rings and necklaces that once belonged to rich Egyptian families. There were a lot of small coins from the same time, too.

The museum has some very old objects. My favourite objects were the metal bowls from the fourteenth century. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools. Some were made of metal and some were made of stone. While I was reading the information, my friend found a tool that was 10,000 years old.

Post-reading question: - What were the tools made of?

Lesson 2

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What's the most famous temple in Luxor?

4. Read and complete the article. ***WB page 116***



The city of Edfu, which is located to the west of the River Nile, is known for the famous Temple of Horus. For hundreds of years, people forgot about the temple until 1860, when a French man, Auguste Mariette, found part of an arch in the sand. He realised that there were 12 metres of sand on top of the ancient building. People carefully took the sand off the temple and today, it is one of the biggest temples in Egypt. Tourists have to buy a ticket to look around the temple, which is more than 2,000 years old. Tourists who go to the temple always remember this awesome building.

Post-reading question: - Who discovered the Temple of Horus?

Practice B

Based on Units 4, 5 & 6

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

1. Who is your hero?
   a) My father. b) My mother.
   c) My daughter. d) My grandfather.
2. Where was he born?
   a) In a village. b) In a city. c) In a town. d) In a fort.
3. What was he interested in?
   a) Tennis. b) Football. c) Helping people. d) Reading.
4. What's his job?
   a) A teacher. b) A doctor. c) A nurse. d) A baker.

2 Complete the following dialogue: 5

Hala : Where did you go on holiday last year?
Nora : I went to Alexandria.
Hala : Where did you (1)..............................?
Nora : I stayed in my uncle's flat.
Hala : (2).............................. did you travel there?
Nora : I travelled (3).............................. train.
Hala : Did you (4).............................. in the sea?
Nora : Yes, I did.
Hala : What did you eat there?
Nora : I usually (5).............................. fish when I was there.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 6

Ahmed and Soha were in the dinning room and their parents were at work. Soha was doing her homework. They thought their sister Salma was playing with her toys. Soha saw some water. It was coming through the floor. Ahmed and Soha went to the bathroom. They found Salma. She was playing with her toys. There was a lot of water on the bathroom floor and it was running into the dinning room. They talked about the water and decided to dry the floor. They used some of their father's old newspapers. Ahmed decided to phone his mother and father and tell them about the water.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where was Salma playing with her toys?

....

2. How did Ahmed and Soha dry the floor?

....

3. How many persons are there in the family?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the ....

a) floor b) vapour
c) dinning room d) water

5. While Ahmed and Soha were in the dinning room, their parents were at ....

a) school b) home c) work d) bedroom

6. There was a lot of water on the .... floor.

a) bedroom b) dining room
c) hall d) kitchen

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. A .... is a place where you can watch sports matches.

a) lab b) library c) museum d) stadium

2. People wear coats to .... them from cold.

a) effect b) protect c) infect d) keep

3. A .... is a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things.

a) vase b) tap c) pot d) tool

4. To be good at English, you should .... it.

a) recommend b) practise c) do d) play

5. The .... goes to prison for taking things that don't belong to him.

a) police b) thief c) volunteer d) charity

6. I don't like snakes. They're ....

a) scare b) scary c) sacred d) scarf

7. Doctors and nurses help in a .... emergency.

   a) health b) wealth c) healthy d) wealthy

8. Nessma writes in English .... as she speaks it.

   a) much carefully b) more carefully
   c) carefully d) as carefully

9. You .... come with me. I'm happy to go alone.

   a) must b) should have c) mustn't have d) don't have to

10. You .... arrive at school on time.

    a) can't b) would c) must d) mustn't

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

4

1. We must <u>protecting</u> the environment. (......................)
2. My father was driving when a policeman <u>was stopping</u> him. (......................)
3. Europe is not <u>as dry</u> Australia. (......................)
4. English is <u>speaking</u> all over the world. (......................)

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

6

"Water"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

35

End of Term Practice

(WB) Pages 118-119

Tapescript

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What is Aya's father's job?
   a) A shop worker. b) A teacher.
   c) A street-food seller. d) It doesn't say.
2. Why must Aya stay at home every day?
   a) To work. b) To study.
   c) To look after her brothers and sisters. d) To plant trees.
3. Where does Aya have to go in the evenings?
   a) To school. b) To the shops.
   c) To a park. d) To her teacher's house.
4. How does Aya feel when she gets home?
   a) Tired but grateful. b) Angry.
   c) Hungry. d) Sad.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Manal : I can't come to your family party next weekend because my grandfather is in hospital.
Leila : I'm (1)................................... to hear that, Manal. I'll get something.
Manal : What do you (2)................................... , Leila?
Leila : I mean I'll buy him something that you can take to the hospital.
Manal : (3)................................... don't we buy him something together?
Leila : That's an interesting (4)................................... . What can we get him?
Manal : We (5)................................... buy him a magazine to read.
Leila : Good idea!

3 Read the text and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In 1925, a British adventurer called Leonard Woolley was exploring a palace in ancient Babylon (which is located in Iraq today), when he discovered a strange collection of objects. The objects all had labels on them and Woolley realised that this was probably the world's first ever museum! Woolley knew that rich people in the past used to collect special objects in their houses.

In Babylon, the palace was the home of Princess Ennigaldi in the year 530 BCE. Some of the objects, however, were about 1,500 years older. Woolley did not know much about Princess Ennigaldi, but he learned that people were interested in history in the past as much as they are interested in it today. Isn't that fantastic?

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What was Leonard Woolley exploring in 1925? ....
2. Why did he think the objects were from a museum? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Some of the objects in the museum were ....
   a) about 2,000 years old b) the same age as the palace
   c) newer than the palace d) a lot older than the palace
4. What do you think the word "collection" means?
   a) A palace. b) An innovation.
   c) Things without names. d) Things you keep together.
5. What did Leonard Woolley learn about people in the past?
   a) They all had museums. b) They were interested in history.
   c) They were all very rich. d) They were all fantastic.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The boys are waiting .... for the football match to start.
   a) excited b) excitedly c) exciting d) excite
2. Where did your grandparents ....?
   a) lived b) used to live c) use to live d) living
3. While Hassan .... to school, he saw a famous squash player.
   a) was walking b) is walking c) walked d) walks
4. The new book .... I bought is very interesting.
   a) who b) where c) that d) when
5. My favourite city .... in the mountains.
   a) located b) locates c) is located d) is locating
6. Many people in the city live in a .... of flats.
   a) black b) block c) chest d) house

7. How can you .... with somebody who does not speak your language?
   - a) say
   - b) listen
   - c) tell
   - d) communicate
8. The mountain was very high and we all felt .... at the top because we thought we might fall!
   - a) scare
   - b) scared
   - c) happy
   - d) pity
9. You must not .... the objects in the museum.
   - a) touch
   - b) belong to
   - c) relax
   - d) see
10. Kareem's cousin is .... and never puts his books away.
    - a) messy
    - b) cruel
    - c) serious
    - d) polluted

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Does your sister likes ice cream? (........................)
2. Dalida is not here because she plays tennis. (........................)
3. The new hotel is more big than the old hotel. (........................)
4. Some children don't must wear a school uniform. (........................)

6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) summarising the stories of *The Railway Children and A Little Princess.*

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Listening Texts

Check Your English

3. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Narrator 1

Speaker 1: What does an engineer do?
Speaker 2: He or she designs engines or parts of buildings.

Narrator 2

Speaker 1: What is a teaspoon made of?
Speaker 2: Metal (but sometimes plastic).

Narrator 3

Speaker 1: If you can see yourself, what are you looking at?
Speaker 2: A mirror.

Narrator 4

Speaker 1: Which is the highest mountain in the world?
Speaker 2: Mount Everest.

Narrator 5

Speaker 1: Why shouldn't you eat a lot of chocolate?
Speaker 2: There is too much sugar in it.

Narrator 6

Speaker 1: What happens if you touch a jellyfish?
Speaker 2: It stings you.

Narrator 7

Speaker 1: Where did Robinson Crusoe live for many years?
Speaker 2: On an island.

Narrator 8

Speaker 1: Were there any bedrooms in the houses of Deir el-Medina.
Speaker 2: No, there weren't.

Unit 1

General Exercises 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Shahana. I'm from India. I live with my parents. I share a room with my sister. We all get up at 6 a.m. We all have breakfast together. We have bread with cheese.

Cumulative Exercises (Based on Unit 1)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

On Saturdays, I usually get up early ad help my grandmother with her shopping. Then, I read or do my homework. In the afternoon, I visit my friends or play computer games with my brother.

Unit 2

General Exercises 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Teenagers don't often sleep enough. They should sleep about 8 hours a night. People need to spend time with their family and also make friends to feel happy. When you do something kind for someone else, you feel really good.

Cumulative Exercises (Based on Unit 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Dina. I'm Egyptian, but my mother is from England. I live with my parents, my brother, my sister and my grandparents. I'm so happy as I passed my exams. Write soon.

Unit 3

General Exercises 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Magdi Yacoub is the most famous heart surgeon in the world. He was born on 16th November, 1935. When he was 5 years old, he said, "I want to be a surgeon" because his father was a surgeon and his aunt died when she was 20 years old because she was sick from her heart.

Cumulative Exercises (Based on Unit 3)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Someone I admire is my cousin Noura. She's five years older than me, so she's 19 now and she lives in Alex. She's very friendly and clever and she's got long, curly, brown hair and blue eyes. She's medium height.

Review A

Practice A (Based on Units 1, 2, 3)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Every day, Hossam gets up eary. Then he washes. He has breakfast at 7.30 and then he gets dressed, says goodbye to his mother and goes to school. In the afternoon, at 1:00, Hossam comes back from school, has lunch, and does his homework in the afternoon.

Unit 4

General Exercises 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet. Senet boxes have 30 squares. The box is made of wood. This game is 3500 years old. Some people didn't have these boxes, so they drew the squares on the floor.

Cumulative Exercises (Based on Unit 4)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Rosetta Stone is in the British Museum in London. After many years of studying the Rosetta Stone François Champollion could read hieroglyphs in 1822. It was found on July 19, 1799 in Rashid.

Unit 5

General Exercises 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I think the girl who came into my baker's shop was a servant because she didn't have very new clothes. When Sara left, she gave most of her cakes to the beggar. I was surprised. I feel she behaved like a princess.

Cumulative Exercises (Based on Unit 5)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A: What are you doing tomorrow?
B: Nothing really.
A: Let's watch a film or something.
B: What's on these days?
A: I think they're playing Lord of the Rings.
B: That sounds pretty good. Let's watch that.
A: Where should we meet?
B: How about meeting at the entrance?
A: All right. I'll meet you there at 7:30.

Unit 6

General Exercises 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My home city is Minya. It's located near the Nile. Potatoes and sugar are grown there. It's known for black honey. There are many monuments.

Cumulative Exercises (Based on Unit 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

There is always ice in Antarctica. There is more than 4,500 metres of ice in some places. The bottom of this ice is more than 100,000 years old. There aren't any countries there.

Review B

Practice B (Based on Units 4, 5 & 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My grandfather is my hero. He was born in a village in 1952. He worked hard at school and he went to university. He was always interested in helping people and he became a doctor.

End of Term Practice

Aya is 13 and lives in a village in India. Her father is a street-food seller and her mother is a shop worker. They have to work every day, so Aya must stay at home to look after her younger brothers and sisters. Then, when her parents come home from work, Aya goes to school in the evening. Aya always goes to school in the dark, but she loves her lessons and always listens to the teacher carefully.
Today, the girls are learning about how to look after plants and trees. Aya always feels very tired when she gets home, but she is grateful for being able to learn.

AL ADWAA

Gem

جديد

كود الأضواء للتعلم التفاعلى

New Hello!



2021

2nd Prep

First Term

Teacher's Guide

Unit 1

Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) daily 2. b) on 3. a) text 4. b) play 5. d) routine
6. d) interview 7. a) best 8. b) block 9. c) listen 10. c) baker's
11. d) spend 12. a) take 13. d) for 14. b) make

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) always 2. a) never 3. b) usually like
4. a) is never 5. d) Who 6. b) Does
7. a) How many 8. a) Do 9. b) doesn't often

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. often reads 2. are never 3. has
4. do you get up 5. Do you speak

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. How 2. walk 3. free
4. always/usually … 5. have

General Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes 2. When/What time 3. Who
4. never 5. Because/As

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) watch 2. a) on 3. a) sofa 4. d) way
5. c) play 6. a) routine 7. b) do 8. d) cooks
9. b) comes 10. c) How

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. is always 2. watch
3. What 4. Who

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your daily routine at the weekend"

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) life 2. c) typical 3. d) taps 4. a) feed 5. c) messages
6. b) attractive 7. b) borrow 8. a) adventures 9. d) prison 10. a) railway
11. b) terrible 12. a) share 13. d) with 14. c) watermelon

General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) India. 2. d) Bread and cheese. 3. a) No. 4. d) At 6 a.m.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) away 2. a) do 3. c) prison 4. b) large 5. a) terrible
6. a) poor 7. a) knife 8. b) goes 9. d) usually helps
10. a) never

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. sometimes go 2. is usually 3. take 4. doesn't

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:
"Jobs you do at home"
Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) cushions 2. c) carpet 3. a) chest 4. d) mirror 5. d) wardrobe
6. b) basin 7. c) bookshelf 8. d) next 9. a) front 10. b) practise
11. b) belongs 12. a) break 13. d) walk 14. c) nature

General Exercises (Lessons 5 & 6)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. with 2. many 3. share 4. do 5. Are

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) for 2. a) get 3. c) pen 4. a) sells 5. b) reply
6. a) downstairs 7. a) Carpets 8. a) play 9. a) always 10. d) always

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Where 2. does 3. doesn't 4. walk

4. Write an email of NINETY (90) to your friend Ahmed to tell him about your house. Your name is Tamer.
Left to students.

Al-Azhar Corner (Based on Unit 1)

1. Finish the following two-mini dialogues:

A) Ali : I always get up early.

B) Samar : What do you do in your free time?

2. Match column A with column B:

1. e 2. f 3. d 4. c 5. b

3. Write a paragraph of about (7) sentences on:

"Your daily routine"

Left to students.

Unit 1 Cumulative Exercises

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) My brother. 2. d) In the afternoons.
3. b) Early. 4. c) My grandmother.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. No 2. Did 3. What
4. How many 5. always

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. He always starts school at 8 in the morning.
2. He goes to school by bus.
3. He arrives home at 3:30.

B) 4. a) cheese with milk 5. c) preparatory 6. a) near

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) wardrobe 2. a) keeps 3. c) Lamps 4. b) mirror
5. b) typical 6. b) attractive 7. c) break 8. b) usually play
9. b) Does 10. b) Why

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. often reads 2. How
3. doesn't 4. play

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your usual day"

Left to students.

Unit 2

Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) patients 2. b) traditional 3. b) ward 4. b) park 5. c) stall
6. a) call-centre 7. c) make 8. b) seller 9. d) artist 10. c) deaf
11. d) calligraphy 12. a) neighbour 13. d) tins 14. b) in

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) 'm studying 2. a) is sleeping 3. d) is raining 4. c) are saying
5. d) Does he eat 6. b) drives 7. b) Is she working
8. a) is singing 9. c) wants

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. running 2. gives 3. speak
4. visit 5. am not working

General Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. is 2. engineer 3. do
4. are 5. Do

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) get 2. d) repair 3. a) on 4. c) gave 5. b) skills
6. d) sewing 7. b) communicate 8. d) is standing
9. a) is waiting 10. d) go

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. makes 2. rains 3. are building 4. take

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Different people in your family"

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) sharp 2. b) suitcases 3. a) wedding 4. b) crowds 5. c) treat
6. c) striped 7. a) funny 8. c) fly 9. a) friendly 10. c) grateful
11. b) hangs 12. a) foreground 13. c) light

Answers

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) happily
2. d) badly
3. c) hard
4. a) slowly
5. b) careful
6. d) loudly
7. b) fast
8. a) comfortable
9. c) slowly

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. dangerously
2. carefully
3. good
4. late
5. well

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. photo
2. shows
3. foreground
4. on
5. striped

General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) 8.
2. c) Both a and b.
3. d) Good.
4. a) Teenagers.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) make
2. d) normal
3. c) sharp
4. c) at
5. b) taking
6. c) alone
7. b) guests
8. d) well
9. a) sad
10. a) easily

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. well
2. lovely
3. hard
4. sad

4. Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your new friend Reda to tell him about your problems at school. Your name is Essam.

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) shame
2. b) hope
3. d) miss
4. b) passed
5. d) Guess
6. a) prepare
7. c) with
8. c) to
9. a) on
10. b) amazing
11. b) practice
12. b) coach

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. sorry
2. shame
3. must
4. great
5. worry

General Exercises (Lessons 5 & 6)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Congratulations!
2. news
3. like
4. Where
5. What

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) shame
2. a) street-food seller
3. b) park
4. d) wedding
5. Congratulations
6. a) make
7. b) ward
8. d) angrily
9. a) dangerously
10. b) is raining

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. is studying
2. goes
3. quietly
4. slowly

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Telling your friend good news"

Left to students.

Al-Azhar Corner (Based on Unit 2)

1. Finish the following two-mini dialogues:

A) Nadia : I'm sorry to hear that.

B) Sarah : Thanks. I'm very happy.

2. Match column A with column B:

1. d 2. a 3. f 4. b 5. c

3. Write an email to your friend Taha. Tell him that your little brother is in hospital. Your name is Amr.

Left to students.

Unit 2 Cumulative Exercises

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) An email. 2. d) Egyptian.
3. b) Happy. 4. c) England.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. fine 2. What 3. Where
4. studying 5. hope

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. After seeing a television programme about a doctor who worked in China.
2. He worked in China.
3. He had a broken leg.

B) 4. b) The north.
5. b) Some older and younger doctors.
6. a) They were together in the same school.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) lazy 2. a) repair 3. b) desert 4. d) teenager
5. c) Normal 6. a) alone 7. c) calligraphy 8. a) make
9. a) is staying 10. b) spend

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. are watching 2. running
3. kindly 4. badly

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"How to be happy in your life"

Left to students.

Unit 3

Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) junior 2. b) hero 3. d) surgeon 4. a) with
5. b) improve 6. a) treatments 7. a) attacked 8. b) charity worker
9. d) against 10. c) competition 11. a) cancer 12. b) throwing
13. d) for 14. c) teamwork

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) in 2. c) attacked 3. a) ago 4. c) When
5. d) last 6. c) did 7. d) week ago 8. c) when
9. a) no word

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. in 2. get 3. go
4. had 5. wasn't

General Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. did 2. lived 3. was
4. Did 5. didn't

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) shark 2. b) got 3. a) find out 4. b) successful
5. b) lost 6. a) foundation 7. b) surgeon 8. c) drove
9. b) bought 10. d) ago

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. was 2. Did 3. weren't 4. last

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your hero"

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) disaster 2. c) emergency 3. a) serious 4. b) proud 5. c) function
6. d) blood 7. b) jewellery 8. a) infections 9. d) breathe 10. a) started
11. b) cuts 12. a) countryside 13. d) broken

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) play
2. a) didn't use to
3. c) used to live
4. c) Did you use to
5. b) did you use
6. a) used to
7. b) work
8. a) Did
9. c) to play

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. play
2. be
3. Did
4. use
5. didn't
6. didn't use

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. use
2. No
3. walk
4. did
5. read

General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) heart
2. b) In 1935.
3. c) 20 years.
4. d) A surgeon.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) countryside
2. a) in
3. d) charity
4. b) proud
5. d) furniture
6. a) history
7. c) volunteer
8. c) used to
9. a) use to
10. d) use

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. used
2. use
3. cook
4. Did he use

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your past habits"

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) scared
2. a) rubbish collectors
3. d) brave
4. c) heroic
5. a) statues
6. b) manager
7. a) keep
8. d) pays
9. a) firefighter
10. d) for

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. What
2. sure
3. words
4. Sorry
5. mean

General Exercises (Lessons 5 & 6)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. mean
2. understand
3. true
4. what
5. agree

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) try
2. d) Junior
3. c) at
4. a) reason
5. a) make
6. b) studies
7. c) Senior
8. c) used to be
9. a) take
10. b) did you use

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. did
2. arrived
3. use
4. used to visit/visited

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A person you admire"

Left to students.

Al-Azhar Corner (Based on Unit 3)

1. Finish the following two-mini dialogues:

A) Salem : My father is my hero.

B) Samar : What did you use to do when you were young?

2. Match column A with column B:

1. d 2. a 3. e 4. f 5. b

3. Write a paragraph of about (7) sentences on:

"A person in your family you admire"

Left to students.

Unit 3 Cumulative Exercises

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) In Alex. 2. a) My cousin. 3. c) 14 years. 4. d) Long and curly.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. mean 2. true 3. What 4. use to 5. understand

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Because he gave them three weeks off and he bought them a very nice wedding gift.

2. He works in a company.

3. A present.

B) 4. b) garden 5. c) be a gardener 6. a) The husband

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) disease 2. b) staff 3. c) Expert 4. d) from 5. c) Lungs

6. a) brain 7. a) pump 8. b) sat 9. c) didn't use 10. a) didn't use to

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. have 2. used to

3. went 4. did

6. Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Dina to tell her about your hero. Your name is Yasmin.

Left to students.

Review A

Practice A (Based on Units 1, 2 & 3)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) One o'clock.
2. b) Early.
3. d) has breakfast
4. b) In the afternoon.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. favourite
2. football
3. Where
4. What
5. playground

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. She is Saudi Arabian.

2. She was born in Riyadh.

3. He is a head teacher.

B) 4. c) on foot　5. a) Aisha　6. b) website

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) successful
2. b) Expert
3. b) curtains
4. b) spending
5. d) sorry
6. b) Foundation
7. c) countryside
8. c) When
9. b) hungrily
10. a) doesn't drink

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. is always
2. Where
3. lives
4. lazily

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your city or village in the past"

Left to students.

Answers

Unit 4

Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) awesome 2. d) ancient 3. d) mosques 4. b) statues 5. d) national
6. c) stadiums 7. a) entrance 8. b) behave 9. c) view 10. a) ruins
11. b) dates 12. b) get 13. a) in 14. d) packed 15. a) recommend

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) must 2. a) must 3. d) mustn't 4. a) must 5. a) meet
6. d) must 7. d) mustn't 8. b) must 9. b) must

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. must 2. use 3. forget 4. be

General Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. mustn't 2. Why 3. mustn't 4. wear 5. go

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) tickets 2. c) in 3. b) recommends 4. a) objects 5. d) race
6. a) stadium 7. c) pray 8. a) must 9. a) must 10. d) must

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. mustn't 2. mustn't 3. be 4. use

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"The Pyramids"

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) clay 2. a) papyrus 3. d) coin 4. c) masks
5. d) necklace 6. a) rings 7. c) insects 8. b) protect
9. a) cost 10. b) vase 11. b) customers 12. c) except

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) was
2. b) as
3. b) hurt
4. a) was sleeping
5. a) started
6. d) was practising
7. c) ate
8. b) was raining
9. a) were they doing

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. were having
2. arrived
3. when
4. forgot

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. Can
2. Certainly
3. I'd
4. like
5. Thank

General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) The ancient Egyptians
2. a) 3500
3. c) 30
4. d) floor

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) tool
2. c) figure
3. c) paint
4. a) mix
5. a) make
6. a) away
7. b) play
8. b) were walking
9. c) rang
10. a) as

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. driving
2. was doing
3. met
4. arrived

4. Write an email to your friend Asmaa to tell her about objects in your house. Your name is Kady.

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) debate
2. d) Tourism
3. d) historic
4. a) drop
5. b) local
6. c) damage
7. d) century
8. a) to
9. d) company
10. a) ruler

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. think
2. don't
3. local
4. don't
5. mean

General EXercises (Lessons 5 & 6)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. think
2. think
3. agree
4. mean
5. Maybe

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) report
2. d) for
3. d) hotels
4. b) follow
5. a) special
6. d) behave
7. a) Wars
8. c) must
9. d) was cooking
10. a) was walking

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. was preparing
2. stopped
3. damage
4. mustn't

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"An ancient Egyptian object"

Left to students.

Al-Azhar Corner (Based on Unit 4)

1. Finish the following two-mini dialogues:

A) Samira: We mustn't come late.

B) Sandy : What do you think about tourism in Egypt?

2. Match column A with column B:

1. e 2. d 3. f 4. b 5. a

3. Write an email to your friend Peter about the Pyramids. Your name is Youssef.

Left to students.

Unit 4 Cumulative Exercises

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) In London. 2. b) In 1822.
3. c) Rashid. 4. a) Many years.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. so 2. agree 3. Maybe 4. what 5. agree

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. It stands next to the Nile on Gezira Island.

2. There are 24 windows on each floor of the building.

3. The Cairo Tower.

B) 4. b) 2.500 5. c) beautiful 6. c) 1956

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) stadium 2. a) arch 3. b) mosque 4. c) statues 5. a) Ruins
6. a) Historic 7. d) guide 8. d) were 9. c) saw 10. a) Did

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. mustn't 2. mustn't 3. while 4. phoned

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A historic place in Egypt"

Left to students.

Unit 5

Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) lucky 2. d) take 3. a) do 4. c) lift 5. a) look after
6. c) put away 7. a) full 8. d) purse 9. a) smile 10. c) strangers
11. b) practise 12. c) fantastic 13. b) give 14. c) on 15. b) tips

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) don't have to 2. c) have to 3. b) should 4. a) shouldn't
5. c) should 6. d) shouldn't 7. c) have to 8. c) Does he have to
9. a) don't have to

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. don't have to 2. Do 3. don't
4. have to 5. don't have

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. have 2. make 3. Do
4. doesn't 5. take

General Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. great/good 2. should 3. have to
4. have 5. do

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) sunglasses 2. a) kindness 3. c) stairs 4. a) Random
5. b) distances 6. d) wheelchair 7. b) thief 8. a) doesn't have to
9. b) should I 10. c) mustn't

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. should 2. Do you have 3. has to 4. should I

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your school rules"

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) trainers 2. d) disabled 3. c) donate 4. boarding 5. c) feed
6. b) princess 7. c) lift 8. a) community 9. d) cruel 10. b) beggars
11. d) generous 12. a) servant 13. c) behaves 14. d) reach 15. c) surprised

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) where 2. a) who 3. d) that 4. b) who 5. a) which
6. b) where 7. a) no word 8. c) who 9. d) who's

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. who 2. which 3. who 4. which 5. who's

General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) old 2. a) Surprised.
3. c) The beggar. 4. c) princess

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) disabled 2. a) beggar 3. c) delicious 4. b) donate
5. a) boarding 6. d) famous 7. c) feed 8. b) which
9. b) that 10. c) where

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. which 2. where
3. which 4. who

4. Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Esraa to tell her about a story you like. Your name is Hend.

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) businesswoman 2. d) firefighter 3. c) passport 4. a) pilot
5. b) bins 6. c) purse 7. b) sailor 8. d) lift
9. b) social 10. b) fisherman 11. d) charity

Answers

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. not
2. better
3. feel
4. think
5. mean

General Exercises (Lessons 5 & 6)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Let's
2. good
3. mean
4. do
5. can

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) cruel
2. a) away
3. d) on
4. d) shares
5. b) helpful
6. c) donation
7. a) laboratory
8. c) have to
9. d) don't have to
10. a) who

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. which
2. which
3. have to
4. have to

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Helping people"

Left to students.

Al-Azhar Corner (Based on Unit 5)

1. Finish the following two-mini dialogues:

A) Roqa : Yes, I have to walk to school because it's near my home.

B) Nariman : What should you do today?

2. Match column A with column B:

1. e 2. a 3. f 4. c 5. b

3. Write a paragraph of about (7) sentences on:

"Some helpful things you did"

Left to students.

Unit 5 Cumulative Exercises

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) *Lord of the Rings* 2. b) Tomorrow.
3. a) At the entrance. 4. a) At 7:30 p.m.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. do 2. have 3. about 4. has 5. to

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Funny event.
2. Because Samy was very nice to his small sister.
3. She was four.

B) 4. b) noisily 5. c) kitchen 6. c) broken

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) messy 2. b) make 3. b) get 4. c) back
5. d) random 6. a) fantastic 7. c) stranger 8. c) who
9. a) don't have to 10. c) have to

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Do 2. don't have to
3. who 4. which

6. Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Nesma to tell her about charity work. Your name is Rahma.

Left to students.

Unit 6

Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) flood 2. d) pollution 3. c) Electric 4. a) environment
5. d) droughts 6. a) climate 7. b) weather 8. c) temperature
9. b) melt 10. a) recycling 11. b) Green 12. a) rubbish 13. c) relaxing

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) more 2. c) younger 3. b) cleverer 4. c) older than 5. a) than
6. b) fast 7. d) not as 8. a) much 9. b) fewer

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. smaller 2. more/less expensive 3. than
4. as windy as 5. worse

General Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. bigger 2. computer 3. as 4. about 5. The computer

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) climate 2. c) droughts 3. d) melting 4. a) pollution 5. d) causes
6. c) serious 7. b) Green 8. b) safer 9. b) more dangerous
10. c) fatter

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. more attractive 2. slower 3. old 4. as

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"The weather in your country"

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) located 2. b) known 3. d) connected 4. c) catch 5. c) prayed
6. a) monuments 7. b) grown 8. a) honey 9. d) wheat
10. c) canal 11. a) Cotton 12. d) funny 13. b) Tourists 14. b) along

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) Is 2. d) is eaten 3. d) by 4. b) are read 5. d) is spoken
6. c) is made 7. a) painted 8. c) is cleaned 9. c) is found

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. is driven 2. kept 3. Are 4. are cleaned 5. sold 6. is

General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Minya. 2. d) Black honey.
3. d) Potatoes and sugar. 4. a) Near the Nile.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) from 2. b) from 3. a) reserves 4. a) protect 5. a) on
6. b) result 7. a) believe 8. b) easier 9. a) writes 10. d) further

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. busier 2. than 3. fed 4. are made

4. Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Hisham to tell him about your city. Your name is Samy.

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) make 2. a) vote 3. c) solve 4. d) collect 5. b) Recycling
6. d) global 7. c) riverbank 8. b) with 9. a) damages 10. d) importance

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. agree 2. true 3. why 4. How 5. idea

General Exercises (Lessons 5 & 6)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. problem 2. could 3. don't 4. How 5. That's

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) causes 2. c) flood 3. c) including 4. b) centre 5. a) reminds
6. c) reuse 7. b) polluted 8. a) more 9. d) is recycled 10. b) are cleaned

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. faster 2. more difficult 3. is made 4. are repaired

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Recycling at home"

Left to students.

Al-Azhar Corner (Based on Unit 6)

1. Finish the following two-mini dialogues:

A) Ali : Most mobile phones are made in China.

B) Samar : Who is older, your father or your mother?

2. Match column A with column B:

1. d 2. a 3. f 4. b 5. e

3. Write an email to your friend Hassan to tell him about water pollution. Your name is Salah.

Left to students.

Unit 6 Cumulative Exercises

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) In Antarctica.
2. d) More than 4,500 metres.
3. b) More than 100,000 years old.
4. b) No.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. don't 2. could 3. like 4. good 5. true

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The celebration of Earth Day began in the city of San Francisco.

2. It was started by their ruler John McConnell.
3. Earth Day is important because it reminds us to stop and look at the problems of our environment.

B) 4. b) students

5. d) All of these.
6. c) Pick up trash in their community.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) rubbish 2. d) flood 3. a) pollution 4. c) drought 5. b) polluted
6. b) Canal 7. b) weather 8. a) fast 9. d) is studied 10. a) is grown

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. isn't 2. Is TV 3. is 4. as bad as

6. Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Menna to tell her about how to help the environment. Your name is Asmaa.

Left to students.

Review B

Practice B (Based on Units 4, 5 & 6)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) My grandfather.
2. a) In a village.
3. c) Helping people.
4. b) A doctor.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. stay 2. How 3. by 4. swim 5. ate

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. She was playing with her toys in the bathroom.
2. They used some of their father's old newspapers.
3. There are five persons.

B) 4. d) water 5. c) work 6. b) dining room

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) stadium 2. b) protect 3. d) tool 4. b) practise
5. b) thief 6. b) scary 7. a) health 8. d) as carefully
9. d) don't have to 10. c) must

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. protect 2. stopped 3. as dry as 4. spoken

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Water"

Left to students.

End of Term Practice

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) A street-food seller.
2. c) To look after her brothers and sisters.
3. a) To school.
4. a) Tired but grateful.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. sorry 2. mean 3. Why 4. idea 5. could

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Leonard Woolley was exploring a palace in ancient Babylon (which is located in Iraq today).

2. Because the objects all had labels on them.

B) 3. d) a lot older than the palace

4. d) Things you keep together.

5. b) They were interested in history.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) excitedly
2. c) use to live
3. a) was walking
4. c) that
5. c) is located
6. b) block
7. d) communicate
8. b) scared
9. a) touch
10. a) messy

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. like
2. is playing
3. bigger
4. don't have to

6. Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) summarising the stories of *The Railway Children* and *A Little Princess*.

Left to students.

NAHDET MISR